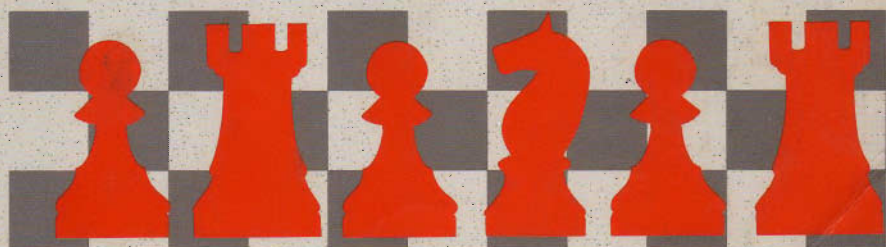


WINNING WITH THE SCOTCH



GARY LANE

Winning With the Scotch

To: Angus D.

Winning With the Scotch

Gary Lane

B. T. Batsford Ltd, *London*

First published 1993
(c) Gary Lane 1993
Reprinted 1994

ISBN 0 7134 7211 1

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data.
A catalogue record for this book is available from the
British Library.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted
by any means, without prior permission of the publisher.

Typeset by B. B. Enterprises, Brighton
and printed in Great Britain by
Redwood Books, Trowbridge, Wilts

for the publishers, B. T. Batsford Ltd,
4 Fitzhardinge Street, London W1H 0AH

A BATSFORD CHESS BOOK
Adviser: R. D. Keene GM, OBE
Technical Editor: Graham Burgess

Contents

Symbols	6
Preface	7
Historical Introduction	9
1 Classical Variation: 7 Qc4	11
2 Classical Variation: 7 g3	26
3 Classical Variation: Other Lines With 5 Qe3	33
4 Classical Variation: 5 f3	37
5 Classical Variation: 5 f5	54
6 Classical Variation: 5 xc6	61
7 Scotch Four Knights	64
8 Mieses Variation: 8 ... f3 b6	82
9 Mieses Variation: 8 ... Qa6 9 b3	93
10 Mieses Variation: 8 ... Qa6 9 d2	104
11 Mieses Variation: 8 ... Qa6 9 e4	115
12 Mieses Variation: Other Lines	118
13 Neo-Mieses Variation	124
14 Steinitz Variation: 4 ... Wh4	128
15 Other Black Defences	134
Index of Variations	142

Symbols

+	Check
++	Double check
mate	Checkmate
!	Good move
!!	Excellent move
?	Bad move
??	Blunder
!?	Interesting move
?!	Dubious move
±	Small advantage for White
∓	Small advantage for Black
±	Clear advantage for White
∓	Clear advantage for Black
+-	Winning advantage for White
-+	Winning advantage for Black
=	The position is equal
∞	The position is unclear
1-0	White wins
0-1	Black wins
$\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$	Draw
Ol	Olympiad
izt	Interzonal
zt	Zonal
Ch	Championship
Corr	Correspondence
Jnr	Junior
m	Match

Preface

The Scotch is an old, established opening which has recently come back into fashion as a result of its adoption by Gary Kasparov. It offers excellent opportunities for tactical players, with lines such as the Mieses Variation leading to original and exciting positions. The Scotch Four Knights is ideally suited to the more positional player.

This book gives the current state of theory of all the major variations of the Scotch with an emphasis on the fashionable lines. The illustrative games demonstrate the critical ideas for both White and Black, and there is complete coverage of side variations for those who wish to avoid the main lines. If the main games are thoroughly absorbed then the reader will develop a good feel for the types of middlegame which can arise. It is my belief that anyone who plays the Scotch will be rewarded with rich and interesting games.

Gary Lane
March 1993

Historical Introduction

The Scotch derived its name from a correspondence game between Edinburgh and London, dating from 1826 to 1828. That game started 1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♗c6 3 d4 ♘xd4 4 ♘xd4 exd4 5 ♗xd4 ♗e7 6 ♗c4 ♗c6 7 ♗d5 and White went on to win after 60 moves. It is ironic that in an earlier game in that series, London played the first few moves of the opening but then branched off into a gambit line, as if they had recaptured on d4 it might now be known as the English instead of the Scotch! For those interested, the opening moves of the 1824 encounter were 1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♗c6 3 d4 exd4 4 ♗c4 ♗c6 5 c3 ♗e7 6 0-0 dxc3 7 ♘xc3 d6 8 ♗d5 ♗d7 9 b4 ♘xb4 10 ♘xb4 ♗xb4 11 ♗g5 ♗h6 12 ♗b2 with unclear play. The first recorded mention of the Scotch (Göring) Gambit has been traced back to the Italian Ercole del Rio in 1750, and it is from this source that the London team borrowed the idea. In this volume we consider only the Scotch Game, in which White recaptures immediately on d4.

The popularity of the Scotch Game has fluctuated wildly over the last century or so. Around the end of the century it was a frequent choice despite the success of Steinitz's 4 ... ♗h4 at that time. Later, attention switched to the Scotch Four Knights which was adopted by Capablanca on numerous occasions. However, eventually this developed a drawish reputation and attention turned to the Ruy Lopez.

The Scotch was then only seen occasionally up to the late 1960s when it was adopted by Radulov, Savon and Kupreichik. Although a great deal of analysis was undertaken at that time, interest faded again until the 1980s when it was often used as a surprise weapon by the Dutch Grandmaster Jan Timman.

The current wave of popularity can be traced back to the sensational fourteenth game of the Kasparov - Karpov 1990 World Championship match in Lyon. The fascinating complications of that game and the romantic nature of the Scotch Opening captured the public's imagination, and soon it was being played

10 *Historical Introduction*

around the world. Kasparov has since turned to it on many occasions and many other world-class grandmasters have made important theoretical contributions. At the time of writing the future of the opening looks brighter than ever, even after more than 165 years of tournament competition with the Scotch.

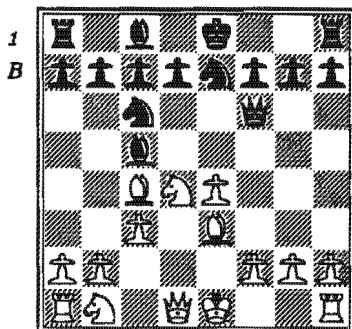
1 Classical Variation: 7 Qc4

One of the main reasons why the Scotch has come back into fashion is the spectacular results achieved by White with the 5 Qe3 xf6 6 c3 ge7 7 Qc4 system, which had been neglected for decades in preference to the more forcing 5 b3 .

The idea of 7 Qc4 has been known for a long time but it was previously thought that 7 ... e5 and 8 ... g6 was a suitable remedy, leading to equality according to an analysis by Sokolsky in the 1940s. This view was challenged in 1991 during a lecture at the Chess School of Iceland. The consequences of the line were discussed at a deep level with the result that Icelandic players enjoyed a spate of spectacular victories in Europe and the USA which aroused a great deal of interest. The basis of the new idea is that the e-pawn can be abandoned in the quest for rapid development. The theoretical debate has continued, and Kasparov has given it the "royal" seal of approval by adopting it in his own games.

Kasparov - Short Linares 1992

- | | | |
|---|------------------|---------------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | f3 | c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | xd4 | Qc5 |
| 5 | Qe3 | xf6 |
| 6 | c3 | ge7 |
| 7 | Qc4 (1) | |



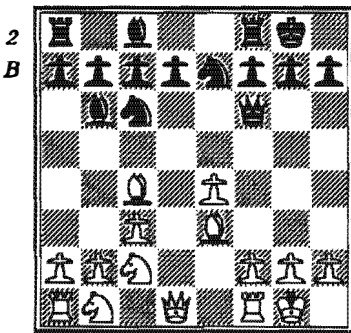
This is the beginning of the line which has revolutionized the reputation of the Scotch. White declares his aggressive intentions at the earliest opportunity by pin-pointing f7. The major alternative, 7 g3 , is examined in the next chapter.

- | | | |
|---|--------------|--------------|
| 7 | ... | O-O |
| 8 | O-O | Qb6 |

Black has no time to play 8 ... a6 in order to have the option

12 Classical Variation: 7 Qc4

of retreating the bishop to a7: 9 Qh1! (9 f4 d6! 10 Qh1 Qa7) 9 ... b5 (9 ... d6? 10 Qxc6 Qxc6 11 Qxc5 dxc5 12 f4±) 10 Qe2 Qb7 11 f4 d6 12 Qf3 Qg6 (Hjartarson - Goldin, Philadelphia 1991) 13 Qxc6! Qxe3 (13 ... Qxc6 14 Qxc5 dxc5 15 e5 Qxf3 16 Qxf3±) 14 Qa5 Qxf4 15 g3! Qe5 16 Qxb7 a5 17 Qe2+-.
 9 Qc2!? (2)



The knight retreats in order to emerge on d5 via e3. This seems the best of an assortment of ideas:

a) 9 Qa3 and now:

a1) 9 ... d6?! 10 Qdb5 and now

a11) 10 ... a6 11 Qxd6 Qd8 (11 ... Qxe3! 12 Qxc8 Qaxc8 13 fxe3 Leko - Huzman, Wijk aan Zee 1992) 12 e5! Qg6 13 Qxb6 cxb6 14 Qe2 Qe6 15 Qxb7 Qd7 16 Qd6 1-0 van der Wiel - David, Mondorf 1991.

a12) 10 ... Qa5 11 b4 a6 12 bxa5

axb5 13 Qxb5 Qxa5 14 Qxc7 Qxc3 15 Qc1 Qe5 16 Qb6 Qa3 17 Qb5 Qa6 18 Qc7 Qa5 19 Qxd6+- van der Wiel - Sarfati, Manila Ol 1992.

a2) 9 ... Qxd4!? 10 cxd4 d5!?

11 exd5 Qd8 12 Qh5 h6 13 Qfe1 Qf5 14 Qf3 Qd7 15 Qb5 Qad8 (Chandler - Short, English Ch 1991) 16 Qc3 Qxd4 17 Qxd4 Qxd4, intending 18 Qb5 c6! 19 dxc6 bxc6 20 Qxc6 Qg4 21 Qe4 Qxc6 22 Qxc6 Qb4 with unclear chances according to Chandler.

a3) 9 ... Qg6 and now:

a31) 10 Qxc6 bxc6 11 Qe1 d6 12 Qd2 Qb7 13 Qad1 h6 14 Qc2 Qad8 15 Qc1 Qfe8 16 f3 Qf6 17 Qh1 Qg6 18 Qd4= Leko - van der Sterren, Nettetal 1992.

a32) 10 Qd2 Qxd4 11 Qxd4 Qxd4 12 cxd4 d5 13 exd5 Qh3 14 f4 Qad8 15 Qae1 Qc8 (15 ... Qxd5? 16 Qe5 c6 17 Qg5+-) 16 Qb3 Qf5 17 Qc4 Qb6 18 Qxb6 axb6 19 Qe5± Mainka - van der Sterren, Prague 1992.

b) 9 Qb3 and now:

b1) 9 ... d6 10 Qh1 Qxd4 11 cxd4 Qc6 12 Qc3 Qxd4 13 Qd5 Qe5 14 Qxd4 Qxd4 15 Qxc7 Qb8 16 Qe2 Qf6 17 Qd5 Qh6 18 Qad1 Qe6 19 f4± Dolmatov - Yusupov, Wijk aan Zee (10) 1991.

b2) 9 ... Qa5 10 Qc2 Qc4 11 Qc1 d5 12 exd5 Qxd4 13 cxd4 Qf5 14 Qc3 Qxc2 15 Qxc2 Qb6 16 Qe4 Qd6 17 Qf4 Qd7 18 d6 cxd6 19 a4 Qfe8 20 Qf3 Qc6 21 Qfd1 ad8 22 Qg3± J. Polgar - Granda Zuniga, Madrid 1992.

c) 9 Qh1?! Qd8 (9 ... Qa5? 10 Qd3 d5? 11 exd5 Qxd5 12 Qh5+-; 9 ... Qxd4?! 10 cxd4 d5 11 Qxd5! Qxd5 12 exd5 Qd8 13 Qc3±) 10 Qh5!?! h6 11 Qd2 d5! 12 exd5 Qxd4 13 cxd4 Qf5 14 Qf3 Qg6

15 $\underline{Qf4}$ $\underline{Bg4}$ 16 $\underline{Wxg4}$ $\underline{Qxg4}$ 17 f3!
 $\underline{Qf5}$ 18 g4 $\underline{Qh7}$ 19 d6 cxd6 20
 $\underline{Eae1}$ Kasparov - Kamsky,
 Tilburg 1991.

9 ... d6
 10 $\underline{Qxb6}$ axb6
 11 f4 g5!?

A brave approach to force White to relinquish his hold on the coveted e5-square, which can then be occupied by a black knight. A less confrontational approach is 11 ... $\underline{Qe6}$? 12 $\underline{Ed2}$ $\underline{Qxc4}$ 13 $\underline{Qxc4}$ $\underline{Wg6}$ when White maintains a slight spatial advantage.

12 f5 $\underline{Ee5}$
 13 $\underline{Qe2}$ $\underline{Qd7}$
 14 c4

This represents another step in the quest to secure d5 for the white knights.

14 ... g4?!

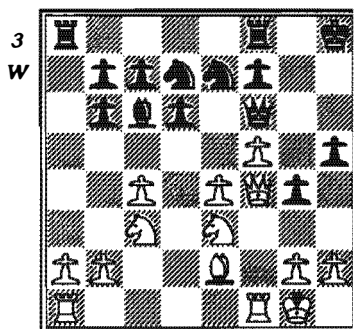
The risky advance on the kingside is designed to create some counterplay, rather than wait for White to build up his forces. In fact, a direct approach to try and exchange one of the knights would have been more effective: 14 ... $\underline{Qa4}$! 15 b3 $\underline{Qc6}$ gives an unclear position e.g. 16 $\underline{Qc3}$? $\underline{Qxc4}$!

15 $\underline{Qc3}$ h5
 16 $\underline{Wd2}$ $\underline{Qh8}$
 17 $\underline{Wf4}$ $\underline{Qc6}$
 18 $\underline{Ee3}$

Now White is on the verge of occupying d5, with the intention of 19 $\underline{Ed5}$ $\underline{Qxd5}$ 20 exd5 followed by $\underline{Ee4}$ and f6 with overwhelming pressure

against the overstretched black g- and h-pawns.

18 ... $\underline{Ed7}$?! (3)



19 $\underline{Qxg4}$

A startling sacrifice to open up a route to Black's king, enabling the rook and queen to create mating threats.

19 ... hxg4
 20 $\underline{Qxg4}$ $\underline{Wh4}$
 21 $\underline{Rf3}$ $\underline{Qg6}$
 22 $\underline{We3}$!

This is the position that Kasparov had judged in his favour on move 19. Another piece is left hanging for the sake of the attack, which can only now be cut short by giving up the queen.

22 ... $\underline{Wxg4}$
 23 $\underline{Wh6+}$ $\underline{Qg8}$
 24 $\underline{Rh3}$ $\underline{Wxh3}$
 25 $\underline{gxf3}$!

White allows ^{En17Pegw} doubled pawns to open up the g-file in order to maintain the momentum of his attack by an eventual $\underline{Rg1}$.

25 ... $\underline{Eg5}$
 26 f6 $\underline{Qxf6}$
 27 $\underline{Wxf6}$ $\underline{Eae8}$
 28 $\underline{Qh1}$

14 *Classical Variation: 7 Qc4*

Although Black has managed to extract a rook and bishop for the queen, the vulnerability of his king is the deciding issue.

- 28 ... ♖g6
- 29 h4 ♖e6
- 30 ♖g5 ♖fe8
- 31 h5 ♖e5
- 32 ♖h6 ♖xe4

A desperate response due to 32 ... ♖h4 33 ♖g1+.

- 33 ♖xe4 ♖xe4
- 34 ♖g1 ♖e5
- 35 ♖g5+ ♖h7
- 36 ♖f5+ ♖h6
- 37 ♖f1

The technical exercise at the moment is to prevent the black pieces from swarming around the white king.

- 37 ... ♖e2
- 38 ♖f6+ ♖h7
- 39 ♖g5! ♖e4

If here 39 ... ♖xb2 40 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 41 ♖g6+ ♖h8 42 ♖f6+ ♖g8 43 ♖xb2, with a decisive advantage.

- 40 h6 ♖g6
- 41 h4 ♖e4
- 42 h5 ♖g4+
- 43 ♖xg4 ♖xg4
- 44 hxg6+ fxg6
- 45 ♖f7+ ♖xh6
- 46 ♖xc7 ♖e5
- 47 ♖xb7 ♖xc4
- 48 b3 1-0

As we have seen, the quiet 7 ... 0-0 8 0-0 ♖b6 does not promise Black an equal game. The next two examples feature 7 ... ♖e5; an attempt by Black to curtail the influence of the

powerful white light-squared bishop. This was originally considered to be the refutation of the whole 7 Qc4 variation. However, after 8 Qe2 ♖g6 9 0-0 d5 White has the twist 10 Qh5!, giving up a pawn for a strong initiative, which has completely revived his chances.

**Ehlvest - Beliavsky
Reykjavik 1991**

- 1 e4 e5
- 2 ♖f3 ♖c6
- 3 d4 exd4
- 4 ♖xd4 ♖c5
- 5 ♖e3 ♖f6
- 6 c3 ♖ge7
- 7 ♖c4 ♖e5

This move is the reason why the 7 Qc4 line used to have a poor reputation, as the bishop is immediately forced to retreat. Sokolsky's analysis from the 1940s ran: 8 Qe2 ♖g6 9 0-0 d5 10 exd5 Qh3 11 Qf3 0-0-0. However, Ehlvest has other ideas, as we shall see.

8 Qe2

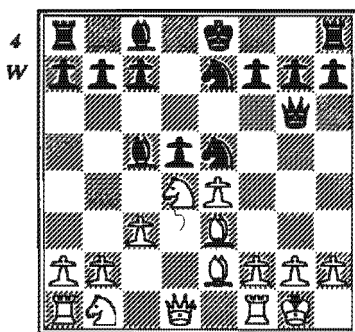
This is the most precise course at this juncture. White intends to force back the black knight by playing f4 and this will only really be effective if the g4-square is well covered. The 'natural' 8 Qb3 is much less convincing: 8 ... ♖g6 9 0-0 ♖xe4 10 ♖d2 (After 10 Qc2 ♖h4!, and 10 ♖b5 ♖c6! White has insufficient compensation for the pawn) 10 ... ♖g4! 11 ♖b5

Qxe3 12 fxe3 Wxd1 13 Waxd1
 Qd8 14 Qxf7 d6 15 h3?! Qf5 16
 e4 Qe3 17 Qb3 a6 18 Qd4 Qxd1
 19 Wxd1 Qe7-+ Meitner - Ros-
 enthal, Vienna 1873.

8 ... Wg6

There are no decent pros-
 pects for Black after 8 ... d5?!
 since the resulting tactics are
 in White's favour: 9 0-0 dxe4 10
 Qb5 Qd6 11 Qc5! 0-0 12 Qxd6
 cxd6 13 Wxd6 Wxd6 14 Qxd6
 QSc6 15 Qd2 He8 16 Hfe1 Qf5 17
 Wad1 Wad8 18 Qb3 h6 19 Qb5 a6
 20 Qf1 Qc8 21 Qa3 Wxd1 22
 Wxd1 Qb6 23 Qc5 Qe5 24 Qxb7
 Qec4 25 Qd6 Hd8 26 Hd4 Qe6
 27 Qc5 Hd7 28 Qxc4 1-0 Stein-
 grimsson - Malaniuk, Kecsk-
 emet 1991.

9 0-0 $\text{d5!?$ (4)



The more solid 9 ... d6 (and
 the risky 9 ... Wxe4) are dis-
 cussed in the next game.

10 Qh5!

This sharp continuation has
 cast doubt on Black's tradition-
 al path to equality. The black
 queen is lured into an exposed
 position, allowing White to
 develop his pieces with gain of

time at the cost of a single
 pawn. Other possibilities are:

a) 10 Qb5?! Qh3 11 Qxc7+ (11
 Qf3 dxe4) 11 .. Qf8 12 Qf3 Qxe3
 13 fxe3 dxe4 F .

b) 10 Qf4 and now:

b1) 10 ... Qh3 11 Qg3 h5 12
 Wa4+ Qf8 13 Qf3 Qxf3+ 14 Qxf3
 h4 15 Qxc7 Qxg2 16 Qxg2 h3 17
 Qg3 hxg2 F Kopayev - Kualy-
 achev, Ukrainian Ch 1949.

b2) 10 ... Wxe4 11 Qg3 Qxd4 12
 Qd2 Wg6 13 cxd4 Q4c6 when
 Black has the better chances
 according to Sokolsky.

c) 10 $\text{Qh1!?$ and now:

c1) 10 ... dxe4 11 Qb5! Qb6 12
 Qxb6 Wxb6 13 Wd4! Wxd4 14
 cxd4 Qg4 15 Qxg4 Qxg4 16
 Qxc7+ Qd7 17 Qxa8 Wxa8 18
 Qc3 f5 19 f3 exf3 20 Wxf3 Qf6
 21 He1 Qc6 22 Wxf5 1-0 Gusakov
 - Radu, Corr 1978.

c2) 10 ... 0-0 (10 ... Wxe4 11
 Qb5!) 11 Qd2 dxe4 12 Qh5 Qg4
 13 Qxg6 Qxd1 14 Qxe4! Qh5 15
 Q2b3 (15 $\text{Qf5}\pm$) 15 ... Qxd4 16
 Qxd4 Q7c6 17 Qc5 Hfe8 18 Hfe1
 f5?! (18 ... $\text{f6!?$) 19 Qc2 Wad8 20
 Qd4 Qxd4 21 $\text{Qxd4}\pm$ Geenen -
 Lacrosse, Belgian Ch 1991.

10 ... Wxe4

If the offer of material is
 declined then White has excel-
 lent chances: 10 ...

Wb6 11 $\text{b4!}\pm$) 11 f4! Qc4 12 $\text{Qf2!}\pm$.

11 Qd2

11 Qb5 is more forceful:

a) 11 ... Qxe3 12 Qxc7+ Qd8 13
 Qxa8 Qc5 14 Qd2 Wf5 (14 ...
 $\text{W4h!?$) 15 Qb3 Qd6 16 Qe2 b6 17
 $\text{a4}\pm$ P. Lukacs.

16 Classical Variation: 7 Qc4

b) 11 ... Qd6 12 Qxa7 (12 Qxd6+ cxd6 13 Qg5 Qg4 14 Qxg4 Qxg4 15 Qxe7±) 12 ... Qxa7 13 Qxa7 Qd7 14 Qd2 Qh4 15 g3 Qh3 16 c4! and White is slightly better according to Vladimirov.

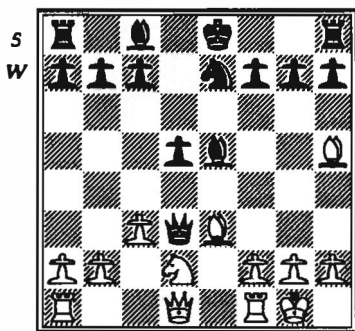
11 ... Qd3

This is practically forced due to 11 ... Qh4?! 12 Qxf7+ Qxf7 13 Qf3 Qf6 14 Qxc5±.

12 Qf3 Qd6

Black soon gets into a tangle after 12 ... Qxe3 13 Qxe5 Qxd2 14 Qf3! Qc5 15 Qxf7+ Qd8 16 Qad1 Qh6 17 Qxd5!+-.

13 Qxe5 Qxe5 (5)



14 Qc5

In return for the pawn White has active play and can gain time by chasing the black queen.

14 ... g6

The idea of shifting the king to the queenside is rather tame: 14 ... Qf6 15 Qe1 g6 16 Qf3 Qe6 17 c4 0-0±.

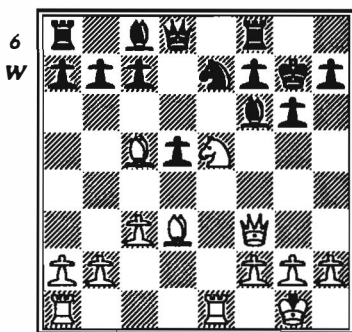
15 Qe2 Qf5

16 Qf3 Qf6

Black loses the right to castle if the bishop retreats

elsewhere, e.g. 16 ... Qd6 17 Qxd6 cxd6 18 Qb5+ Qf8 19 Qd4±.

17 Qe1 0-0
18 Qd3 Qd7
19 Qe5 Qd8
20 Qf3 Qg7 (6)



21 h4!

This is designed to facilitate a clever trap. After 21 ... h5 a classic queen sacrifice is possible: 22 Qxf6+!! Qxf6 23 Qd4 Qg7 24 Qc6+ Qg8 25 Qxd8 Qxd8 26 Qxe7 which picks up a piece.

21 ... Qxh4
22 Qf4 Qf6
23 Qf3

Ehlvest has now completed his preliminary measures in order to threaten a knockout blow: 24 Qxf6+! Qxf6 25 Qd4 mate.

23 ... Qg8
24 Qxf8+ Qxf8
25 Qad1

With the sacrifice of the exchange, Black has avoided an instant calamity and has two pawns to even up the material balance. However, White still

has a healthy initiative and can target the fragile d5-pawn due to his well centralised rooks.

25 ... ♖g7
 26 c4 c6
 27 cxd5 cxd5
 28 Qc4 ♗e7
 29 Qb3

One intriguing idea was to dispense with this safeguarding move and pursue a direct tactical course: 29 ♗g5 a5 30 ♗xh7 ♗xh7 31 ♗xf6. The best way to confront the threat would be to block access to f6 by 29 ... ♗f5 30 g4?! ♗b8!.

29 ... a5
 30 ♗g5 ♖a6
 31 ♗e4 a4

The pawn on b2 is immune from capture: 31 ... ♗xb2? 32 ♗d2 ♗e5 (32 ... ♗a3 33 ♗d4+-) 33 ♗c5 ♖c6 34 ♖xe5 ♖xc5 35 ♗d4 with dual threats against the black rook and of a discovered check.

32 Qc4 ♖e6 }
 33 ♗d2 ♗c7 }
 34 ♗xf6 ♖xf6 }
 35 Qxd5 .

White has finally won the d5-pawn since now 35 ... ♖d6 36 ♗f4 puts a stop to any hopes of pinning the bishop. To avoid the counterplay of the game, 35 ♗b5 could have been considered, with the idea of rounding up the d5-pawn later. The immediate capture allows Black to confuse matters.

35 ... ♗g4
 36 f3 ♗xd5

37 fxg4

If 37 ♗xd5 ♗xf3 is extremely awkward with an impending check on g3.

37 ... ♗g3
 38 g5 ♖f4?

Black can survive after 38 ... ♖f5! 39 ♗d4+ f6 40 gxf6+ ♗h6! (40 ... ♗xf6 41 ♖e6) which is roughly equal according to Ehlvest.

39 ♖f1 a3

No better is 39 ... ♖h4 40 ♖xf7+-.

40 ♖xf4 ♗xf4
 41 ♗d4+ 1-0

The next game illustrates how White should react to the quieter 9 ... d6 (instead of 9 ... d5). The best reply is Ehlvest's 10 f3! which has been the subject of several recent games.

**Schmittziel - I. Sokolov
 Groningen 1991**

1 e4 e5
 2 ♗f3 ♗c6
 3 d4 exd4
 4 ♗xd4 ♗c5
 5 ♗e3 ♗f6
 6 c3 ♗ge7
 7 Qc4 ♗e5
 8 ♗e2 ♗g6
 9 0-0 d6

It is a risky venture to steal the e-pawn: 9 ... ♗xe4?! 10 b4! ♗d6 (10 ... ♗d7 11 cxd7 and 12 ♗d4±; 10 ... ♗d6 11 e4) 11 ♗d2 ♗g6 12 f4 ♗h6 13 ♗e4 0-0 14 ♗xd6 cxd6 15 ♗d2 ♗c6 16 f5

possible is 13 ... Qb6 14 Qf4
 15 Qh5 ♖f6 16 ♗2b3 ♗e7
 17 ♗c2 Qd7 18 ♗f5 Qxf5 19 exf5
 ♖ad8 20 Qe2 ♖fe8 21 a4 a6
 (Illescas - Karpov, Linares 1992)
 22 ♖ad1±.

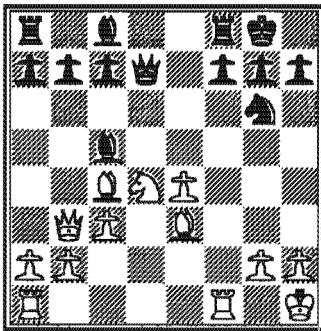
- 14 ♗c4 ♗xc4
 15 Qxc4

The White strategy now is to focus attention on the weak point at f7 by playing ♗b3 and then to double rooks.

- 15 ... ♗g6
 16 ♗b3 ♗d7 (8)

The alternatives do not inspire confidence:

- a) 16 ... ♗e5 17 Qf4! followed by Qxe5 and Qxf7.
 b) 16 ... ♗e7 17 ♗f5! Qxf5 18 exf5 ♗e5 19 f6 with a terrific attack.



- 17 ♗e6!

White seizes the bishop pair whilst opening new avenues for attack.

- 17 ... fxe6
 18 Qxc5 ♖xf1+
 19 ♖xf1 a6?

Black must activate his slumbering queenside so 19 ... b6!? was essential, although

White would still be on top.

- 20 ♗d1!

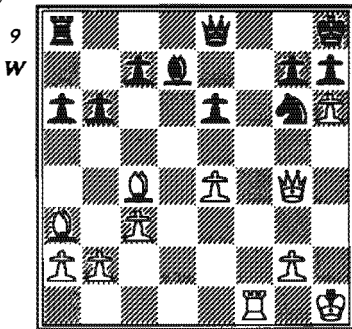
A nice touch, White threatens 21 Qxe6+ ♗xe6 22 ♗d8+±, and Black cannot afford to exchange queens because the white rook would then invade the eighth rank with a winning ending.

- 20 ... ♗e8
 21 h4! b6
 22 Qa3 Qd7

If instead 22 ... Qb7 then 23 ♗g4! Qc8 24 h5 wins.

- 23 h5 ♗e7
 24 ♗g4 ♗h8
 25 h6 ♗g6?! (9)

It looks ugly to accept doubled h-pawns but for good or bad Black had to try this: 25 ... gxf6 26 Qxe6 Qxe6 27 ♗xe6 ♗g6 and the White victory is postponed for a while.



- 26 ♖f8+!

A nice tactic which wins the queen - the rook is taboo to the knight because of mate on g7.

- 26 ... ♗xf8
 27 Qxf8 ♖xf8
 28 hxg7+ ♗xg7

29 Qxa6

White is clearly better and has ample time to snatch a pawn or two.

- 29 ... ♖f4
 30 ♗g5 ♕c6
 31 ♕d3 ♖f7
 32 e5 b5

Sokolov himself points out that installing a rook on the second rank is premature: 32 ... ♖f2? 33 ♕xg6! hxg6 (33 ... ♖xg2 34 ♗f6+!) 34 ♗e7+ ♖h6 35 ♗h4+ ♖g7 36 ♗xf2+-.

- 33 ♖g1 ♕d5
 34 ♕xb5 ♕xa2
 35 ♕e8 ♖f5
 36 ♗d8 ♖xe5
 37 ♗xc7+ ♖h6
 38 ♕a4 ♕d5
 39 ♕c2 ♖h5
 40 ♗xh7+ ♖g5
 41 ♗g7+ 1-0

The next game reveals an interesting idea, 7 ... b6, which was first introduced by Speelman. Black prepares to castle queenside and leaves his options open.

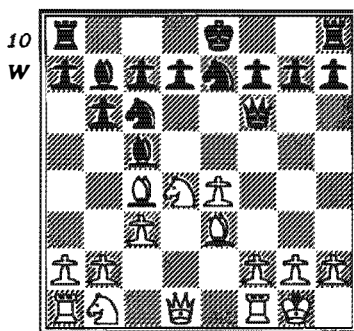
Djurhuus - Hector
 Gausdal 1992

- 1 e4 e5
 2 ♖f3 ♖c6
 3 d4 exd4
 4 ♖xd4 ♕c5
 5 ♕e3 ♗f6
 6 c3 ♖ge7
 7 ♕c4 b6!?

A recent concept. Speelman

was the first to play this idea which is designed to facilitate queenside castling after the fianchetto. In the middlegame Black can try and crash through on the kingside. The minus side is that the black dark-squared bishop no longer has b6 to retreat to, whilst opposite-side castling is risky if White manages to quickly mobilize his queenside pawns.

8 0-0 ♕b7 (10)



9 b4

White selects the most vigorous and sharpest method of meeting the new variation. The other continuations are:

- a) 9 ♖b5 0-0-0 10 ♕xc5 bxc5 11 ♗a4 a6 12 ♖5a3 ♖e5 13 ♖d2 d5 14 ♕e2 ♗g6 15 f3 f5 16 ♖ae1 dxe4 17 ♖ac4 ♖7c6 18 fxe4 fxe4 19 ♖xe4 ♖xc4 20 ♕xc4 ♖e5 21 ♖f2 ♖he8 22 ♖f1 c4 23 ♖d2 ♕xg2 24 ♖xg2 ♖xd2 25 ♖h1! ♖xg2 26 ♕xg2 ♖f8 27 ♖h3+ ♖g4 28 ♗xc4 h5 29 ♗d5 ♖b8 30 ♕g2 ♖f2+ 31 ♖g1 ♖h3+ 32 ♖h1 ♖f2+ ½-½ Relange - Huzman, Cannes 1992.

b) 9 f4 0-0-0 10 e5 ♗h6 11

♙d2 f6 12 ♖a3 ♗xd4 13 cxd4
 ♙xa3 14 bxa3 (14 f5! ♙h5 15
 bxa3 ♗xf5? 16 ♙e2 ♙g6 17
 ♙d3+-) 14 ... ♗f5 15 ♖ac1 fxe5
 16 dxe5 ♗b8 17 ♙d3 ♙e6 18 ♖fel
 (18 ♙xf5 ♙xf5 19 ♖xc7 ♗xc7 20
 ♙d6+ ♗c8 21 ♙xb6 axb6 22 ♖cl+
 ♙c6 23 ♖xc6±) 18 ... ♖c8 19 a4
 ½-½ Chandler - Speelman,
 Hastings 1991/92. Black could
 have carried on with ♗9 ... ♗h4
 and 20 ... ♙g4±.

c) 9 ♗b3? ♙xe3 (9 ... ♗e5 10
 ♗xc5 bxc5) 10 fxe3 ♙g5 11
 ♙xf7+ ♗d8 12 ♖f4 ♗e5 13 ♗d4
 ♙h6 14 ♗d2 c5 15 ♗4f3 ♗d3 16
 ♗c4 ♗xf4 17 exf4 ♗c7 18 e5
 ♗f5 19 ♙d5 ♙xd5 20 ♙xd5 ♙c6
 21 ♙d3 ♖hf8 22 ♖d1 ♖ad8 23
 ♗g5 ♗h4 24 ♗e3 ♗b8 25 ♗d5
 h6 26 ♗e4 g5 27 g3 c4 28 ♙e2
 gxf4 29 gxh4 ♙g6+ 30 ♙g2 ♙h5
 31 ♙f1 f3 32 ♗df6 ♙xe5 33 ♙xf3
 d5 34 ♗d7+- Watson - Wells,
 Walsall 1992.

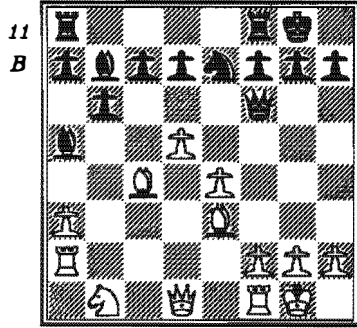
9 ... ♗xd4
 10 cxd4 ♙xb4

For the pawn, White can gain time by attacking the queen and dark-squared bishop. In addition, the mobile pawn centre is an asset.

11 a3 ♙a5
 12 d5

An astute way to increase the pressure by vacating d4 for the bishop. The rook can only be taken at a heavy cost: 12 ... ♙xa1 13 ♙d4 and White is clearly better.

12 ... 0-0
 13 ♖a2 (11)



White must strive to justify the pawn sacrifice, so it is essential to maintain the initiative. The rook is poised to switch across to the kingside to lend support to a pawn-rush. To contain such advances, Black has to try and activate his two bishops which are currently doing very little. It would be a grave error for White to launch an attack without proper preparation: 13 f4? b5! 14 e5 (14 ♙b3 ♙xa1 15 ♙d4 ♙xd4 16 ♙d4 ♙b6+-; 14 ♙d4 ♙b6 15 e5 ♙h6 16 ♙xb5 [16 ♙b3 ♙xd5] 16 ... ♗f5 17 ♙f2 ♗e3 18 ♙xe3 ♙xe3+ 19 ♗h1 ♙xf4+-) 14 ... ♙h6 15 ♙b3 ♗f5 16 ♙f2 (16 ♙c5 d6; 16 ♙c1 ♙b6+ 17 ♗h1 ♗g3+ mate) 16 ... ♙xf4 17 ♙d3 ♙xe5 18 ♖a2 ♗d6 19 ♖e2 ♙g5 0-1 Shirov - Agdestein, Hastings 1991/92.

13 ... ♖ae8

If Black wishes to knock the centre then 13 ... c6 comes into consideration, as played in Schmittziel - Tischbierek, Germany 1992, which continued: 14 ♙d4 ♙g6 (14 ... ♙h6 15 ♙e3

22 Classical Variation: 7 Qc4

♙g6 16 d6! 15 f4 cxd5 16 f5
 ♙g5! 17 ♖f3 dxc4 18 ♖g3 ♙xg3
 19 hxg3 f6 20 ♗c3 d5 with an
 unclear position.

14 ♖e2 ♗g6
 15 ♗d4 ♙h4
 16 g3 ♙h5
 17 f4

Invariably the right response
 in such situations. The wave of
 pawns on the kingside allows
 White to build up his forces
 behind the shield and deprive
 the knight access to e5.

17 ... d6
 18 ♗d2 ♗c8
 19 ♙c2 ♗h3
 20 ♖ff2

It is necessary to over-
 protect f4, otherwise Black can
 force a perpetual check: 20 ♖c1
 ♗xf4 21 gxf4 ♙g4+ 22 ♖h1
 ♗xd2 23 ♙xd2 ♙f3+ 24 ♖g1
 ♙g4+.

20 ... ♗xd2
 21 ♙xd2 f6
 22 ♖e1 ♖e7
 23 ♗b2

White intends to play e5 so
 Black must direct his efforts to
 resist this breakthrough.

23 ... ♖fe8
 24 ♗b5 ♗d7
 25 ♗e2 ♗g4
 26 ♗b5 ♗d7
 27 ♗e2 ♗g4
 28 ♗b5 ♖d8?!

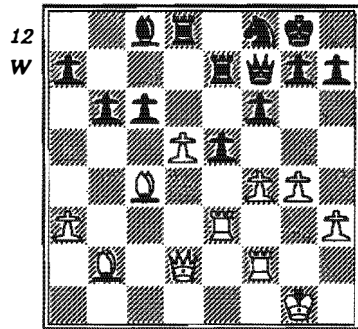
In a misguided attempt to
 win, Black turns down the
 offer to draw by repeating
 moves.

29 ♖e3 ♗f8

30 h3! ♗c8

The bishop is forced to
 surrender its blockading role
 against the white pawns due to
 30 ... ♗xh3 (30 ... ♙xh3?? 31
 ♖h2) 31 ♖h2 ♙g4 32 ♗e2 ♙d7 33
 f5+.

31 g4 ♙f7
 32 ♗c4 c6
 33 e5 dxe5 (12)



34 dxc6!

A startling move that allows
 the white queen to be taken
 but at a heavy price. With this
 tactical stroke White is able to
 gain a material advantage which
 effectively ends the game.

34 ... ♗xd2
 35 ♗xf7+ ♖xf7
 36 ♖xd2 exf4
 37 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7
 38 ♗c3 ♗e6
 39 ♗b4+ ♖e8
 40 ♗d6 g5

An exchange up, the ending
 is a formality for White,
 especially with the bonus of a
 passed pawn. The game con-
 cluded as follows: 41 ♗b8 ♗d8
 42 ♖e2+ ♖f7 43 ♖c2 ♗e6 44
 ♗xa7 ♗d4 45 ♖c4 ♗f3+ 46 ♖f2

Qe5 47 Rc3 f5 48 gxf5 b5 49 Qb8 Qc4 50 a4 Qd2 51 Rc2 Qe4+ 52 Qf3 Qxf5 53 axb5 Qf6 54 Rc5 Qe4+ 55 Qf2 g4 56 Qxf4 Qd5 57 c7 1-0.

We have so far seen that Black has yet to find a suitable route to equality against 7 Qc4 ; neither 7 ... 0-0, 7 ... Qe5 nor 7 ... b6 are fully satisfactory. Even worse for Black is the immediate 7 ... Qg6 which practically loses by force, as the following game shows.

**Ivanchuk - Gulko
Reykjavik 1991**

- | | | |
|---|---------------|---------------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | Qf3 | Qc6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | Qxd4 | Qc5 |
| 5 | Qe3 | Qf6 |
| 6 | c3 | Qge7 |
| 7 | Qc4 | |

Apart from 7 g3 (considered in the next chapter) White has exhausted the possibilities at this stage:

a) 7 Qe2 d6 (or 7 ... d5 8 0-0 0-0 9 Qxc6 Qxc6 with an equal game according to Euwe) 8 0-0 a6 9 f4 0-0 10 Qh1 Qg6 11 Qd2 Re8 12 f5 Qf8 13 Qg5 Qe5 14 Qxc6 bxc6 15 f6 with an unclear position in Konguvel - Tan, Calcutta 1992.

b) 7 Qd2 d5! 8 Qb5 Qxe3 9 Qxe3 0-0! 10 Qxc7 Rb8 11 Qxd5 Qxd5 12 exd5 Qb4! 13 cxb4 Qxb2 14 Qc3 Re8+ 15 Qd1 Qxf2

16 Qd2 Qg4+ and Black is slightly better according to Bilguer.

c) 7 f4 Qxd4 8 cxd4 d5 9 Qc3 dxe4 (9 ... 0-0!?) 10 d5 Qf5 11 Qc5 Qce7 12 Qb5+ c6 13 dxc6 bxc6 14 $\text{Qd5!}\pm$ (suggested by Brat).

d) 7 Qc2 Qxe3 8 Qxe3 Qe5 and now:

d1) 9 Qd2 d5! 10 exd5 Qxd5 11 Qdc4 Qxe3 12 Qxe3 $\text{Qe6}\mp$ Sveshnikov - Korchnoi, USSR Ch 1973.

d2) 9 Qf3 0-0 10 Qc4 d6 11 Qd2 Qe6 12 0-0 Qg5 13 Qe2 Qg6 14 g3 Qh3 15 Qfel Qce5 16 Qh1 Qxc4 17 f4 Qc5 18 Qxc4 $\text{Qxc4}=\text{Tartakower - Tarrasch, Vienna 1922.}$

e) 7 Qd2? Qxd4 8 e5 Qc2+! 9 Qxc2 Qxe5 winning a pawn, Czerniak - Trifunovic, Belgrade 1954.

f) 7 Qb5 a6 8 Qxc6 (8 Qa4?!) Qe5 9 Qe2 $\text{Q7g6}\mp$ Randiir - Keres, Parnu 1947) 8 ... bxc6 9 0-0 0-0 10 Qd2 d6 11 $\text{Qf3}=\text{Roch - Kiovan, Budapest 1970.}$

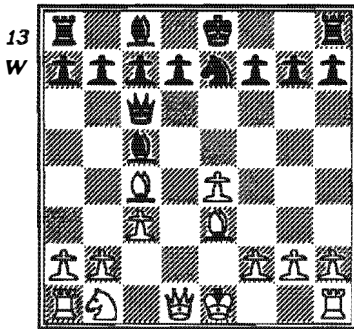
7 ... Qg6?!

This is rarely played for reasons that will soon become obvious. An experiment with 7 ... Qxd4!? occurred in Schmitt-diel - Romanisin, Groningen 1991, and Black was lucky to salvage equality: 8 cxd4 Qb4+ 9 Qc3 Qxc3+ 10 bxc3 0-0 11 0-0 Qc6 12 Qd3 d5 13 Qc2 Qg6 14 exd5 Qf5 15 Qxf5 Qxf5 16 Qfel Qad8 17 Qf4? Qxd4! 18 Qxg6 fxg6 19 Qxc7 Qd7 20 Qad1 Qxc7

24 *Classical Variation: 7 Qc4*

21 ♖xd4 ♗xc3=.

8 ♖xc6 ♗xc6 (13)



No better is 8 ... ♗xe3 9 ♖xe7 ♗xg2 10 ♖f1 with a clear advantage.

9 ♖xf7+!

The bishop is temporarily given up to wreck the kingside and deny Black the opportunity to castle.

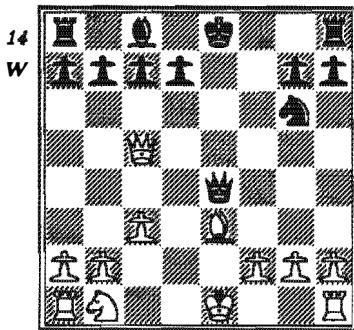
9 ... ♗xf7

10 ♗h5+ ♖g6

A slight improvement is possible: 10 ... g6 11 ♗xc5 ♗xe4, but ultimately White remains on top.

11 ♗f5+ ♗e8

12 ♗xc5 ♗xe4 (14)



13 ♖d2

White is certainly better

with a lead in development and the opposing king stranded in the middle of the board. There is no point in Black snatching the g-pawn as this would merely open up another avenue for White's rooks: 13 ... ♗xg2 14 0-0-0!

13 ... ♗c6

14 ♗h5 d6

15 0-0 ♗e6

16 ♗d4 ♖d7

17 f4

Now that White has whisked the king to safety and given the bishop its most influential square on the a1-h8 diagonal, he is well set to disrupt the co-ordination of the black forces. The f-pawn is used as a battering ram with the immediate threat of 18 f5, forking the defensive pieces.

17 ... ♖e7

18 f5 ♗xf5

19 ♖ae1

The attraction of winning two pieces for a rook is somewhat tarnished after 19 ♖xf5 g6! 20 ♗g5 ♖xf5 21 ♗xh8 ♖xh8 and Black is still hanging on. The text brings White's last piece into the main arena.

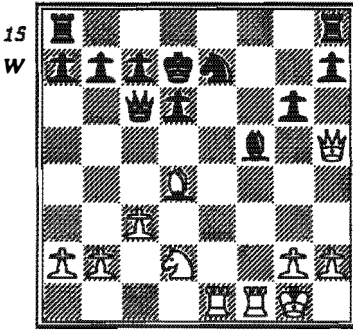
19 ... g6 (15)

20 ♖xe7+!

The culmination of White's campaign. The rook is given up as part of a combination which will exploit the position of Black's king in the centre.

20 ... ♗xe7

21 ♗g5+ ♖d7



22 Qxh8 Wb6+

This is tantamount to resignation since Black remains a piece down with only vague chances of obtaining a few pawns in compensation. However, the alternative is not very attractive either: 22 ... Wxh8 23 Wxf5! gxf5 24 Wg7+ Ge6 25 Wxh8+- .

23 Qd4 Wxb2
 24 g4 Qe6
 25 Wb1 Wxa2
 26 Wb5+ Ge7

27 Wxb7 Wd8
 28 Wf1 Wxd2
 29 Wxc7+ Qd7
 30 Qf6+ Ge6
 31 Wc4+ 1-0

Conclusion

The lines with 7 Qc4 present a real danger to Black. The ease with which Kasparov defeated Short in this line demonstrates what a force it can be, even at the very highest level. The most interesting defence is 7 ... b6 which leads to very double-edged positions. If Black manages to secure equality then the complexities surrounding the sub-variation Watson - Wells will require further investigation. In any case, clearly 7 Qc4 is an ideal winning weapon at all levels of play and is worth studying in some detail.

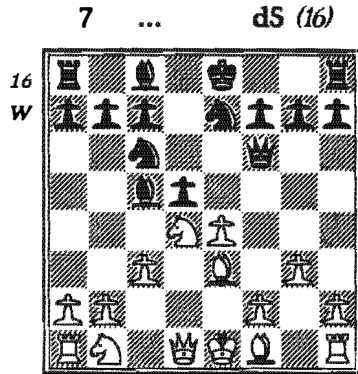
2 Classical Variation: 7 g3

White's possibilities in the Classical Variation are not restricted to 7 Qc4 ; in the last few years another discarded idea has been successfully revived, 7 g3 . This seventh move used to be dismissed by the footnote 7 ... d5= , although one can find some examples from the 1970s with the continuation 8 Qg2 dxe4 9 cb5 , when the resulting complications favour Black. However, Sveshnikov has recently pioneered 9 cd2 on the international scene, a move which makes this variation a fully viable alternative to the more common 7 Qc4 .

Sveshnikov - Yurtaev Podolsk 1990

1	e4	e5
2	cf3	cc6
3	d4	exd4
4	cxd4	Qc5
5	Qe3	ff6
6	c3	cge7
7	g3	

White prepares to fianchetto the bishop; a safer and less complex variation than 7 Qc4 .



Black must challenge in the centre if he wishes to stand any chance of achieving equality. Other replies allow the latent power of White's quiet system to be revealed:

a) 7 ... d6 8 Qg2 and now:

a1) 8 ... ce5 9 h3 Qd7 10 $\text{we2 g5!?$ 11 cd2 c7g6 (Honfi - Knezevic, Majdanpek 1976) 12 c2b3 Qb6 13 0-0-0 ±.

a2) 8 ... Qd7 9 0-0 ce5 10 h3 c4 11 Qc1 cc6 12 we2 (12 $\text{ce2!?$) 12 ... c4e5 13 Qe3 Qb6 14 cd2 0-0 (½-½ Pazos - Spassky, Dubai Ol 1986) is slightly better for White.

b) 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 Qb4+ 9 c3 0-0 10 Qg2 we6 11 we3! Qa5 12 d5 c6 13 Qd4 we8 14 0-0-0 ± Dubinsky - Grabczew-

ski, Moscow 1973/74.

c) 7 ... 0-0 8 $\text{Og}2$ d6 9 0-0 $\text{e}5$ (9 ... $\text{Ob}6$ 10 $\text{e}3$ $\text{g}6$ 11 $\text{c}4$ $\text{xd}4$ 12 $\text{cxd}4$ f5 13 $\text{dxb}6$ [13 e5?!] 13 ... $\text{axb}6$ 14 f3 $\text{e}8$ 15 $\text{c}2=$ Bus - Ong, Oakham 1992) 10 h3 $\text{c}4$ 11 $\text{c}1$ $\text{c}6$ 12 $\text{e}2$ and now:

c1) 12 ... $\text{e}8$ (12 ... a5!?) 13 $\text{f}4$ a6 14 b3 $\text{e}5$ 15 $\text{e}3$ $\text{e}7$ 16 $\text{c}2$ c6 17 $\text{d}4\pm$ Klován - Pioch, USSR 1974.

c2) 12 ... $\text{g}6$ 13 $\text{e}2$ $\text{h}5$ 14 $\text{e}1!$ $\text{e}5$ 15 $\text{f}4!$ $\text{f}3+$ 16 $\text{xf}3$ $\text{xf}3$ 17 b4 (17 $\text{d}2$ $\text{e}5$) 17 ... $\text{b}6$ 18 $\text{b}2$ g5 19 $\text{d}2$ $\text{e}5$ 20 $\text{c}1+$ - Tseitlin - Milicevic, Kragujevac 1974.

8 $\text{Og}2$ dxe4

The main alternatives, 8 ... $\text{xd}4$, 8 ... $\text{e}5$ and 8 ... $\text{xd}4$, are examined in the illustrative game Salov - Karpov.

9 $\text{d}2!$?

The old line, 9 $\text{e}5$, is dubious and despite a recent attempt to revive it, the conclusion that Black emerges with the better game has not been seriously brought into doubt. For example:

a) 9 ... $\text{d}6?!$ 10 $\text{d}2$ and now:

a1) 10 ... $\text{e}5$ 11 $\text{xe}4$ $\text{g}6$ 12 0-0 a6 13 $\text{d}4$ 0-0 14 $\text{xc}6$ $\text{xc}6$ 15 $\text{c}5$ $\text{d}6$ 16 $\text{a}4$ $\text{h}5$ 17 $\text{xb}7$ winning, Dubinsky - Ivanov, Moscow 1973/74.

a2) 10 ... $\text{e}5$ 11 $\text{xd}6+$ $\text{xd}6$ 12 $\text{xe}4$ $\text{g}6$ 13 0-0 \pm Zhuraviev - Semenyuk, Vilnius 1974.

b) 9 ... $\text{xe}3!$ 10 $\text{xc}7+$ $\text{f}8$ 11

$\text{fxe}3$ (or 11 0-0 $\text{b}8$ 12 $\text{fxe}3$ $\text{e}5$ 13 $\text{b}3$ f5 with an unclear position, Sveshnikov - Geller, Sochi 1976) 11 ... $\text{b}8$ 12 $\text{d}5$ and now:

b1) 12 ... $\text{g}5$ 13 $\text{f}4$ $\text{c}5$ 14 0-0 g5 15 $\text{h}5$ $\text{e}6$ with complications favouring Black, Klován - Romanishin, Odessa 1974.

b2) 12 ... $\text{e}5$ 13 $\text{xe}7$ $\text{xe}7$ 14 $\text{d}2$ $\text{d}8$ 15 0-0 $\text{e}6$ 16 $\text{e}2$ f5 17 $\text{b}3$ $\text{xb}3$ 18 $\text{axb}3$ g6 19 g4 $\text{f}8$ 20 $\text{f}4$ $\text{f}6$ 21 $\text{gxf}5$ $\text{gxf}5$ 22 $\text{h}5$ h6 23 $\text{af}1$ $\text{bf}8$ 24 $\text{e}1$ $\text{d}6$ 25 $\text{h}4$ $\text{e}7$ 26 $\text{f}2$ $\text{d}5$ 27 $\text{d}2$ $\text{c}7$ 28 $\text{f}2$ f4 29 $\text{exf}4$ $\text{xf}4$ 30 $\text{g}3$ e3 31 $\text{d}5$ $\text{e}7$ 32 $\text{b}5$ b6 33 $\text{a}1$ $\text{b}8$ 34 $\text{f}3$ $\text{g}6$ 35 $\text{g}4$ $\text{e}4+$ 36 $\text{xf}3$ $\text{xf}3+$ 37 $\text{xf}3$ $\text{d}3$ 38 $\text{g}2$ e2 0-1 Izeta - Lakunza, San Sebastian 1991.

9 ... $\text{b}6$

The other replies give White all the

a) 9 ... $\text{xd}4$ 10 $\text{xe}4$ $\text{c}6$ 11 0-0! $\text{b}6$ 12 $\text{cxd}4$ 0-0 13 $\text{c}5$ $\text{g}6$ 14 $\text{xb}7$ $\text{xb}7$ 15 $\text{xb}7$ $\text{ab}8$ 16 $\text{g}2$ $\text{fd}8$ 17 $\text{a}4\pm$ P. Delaney - Wallace, Mulcahy 1978.

b) 9 ... $\text{xd}4$ 10 $\text{cxd}4$ and now:

b1) 10 ... $\text{f}5?!?$ 11 $\text{xe}4$ $\text{g}6$ 12 $\text{c}3!$ 0-0 (12 ... $\text{d}3?!?$ 13 d5 $\text{e}5$ 14 $\text{a}4+$ c6 15 $\text{d}4$ $\text{c}4$ 16 0-0 0 \pm) 13 0-0 $\text{fd}8$ 14 $\text{a}4$ $\text{c}2?!?$ 15 $\text{a}3$ $\text{f}5$ 16 $\text{d}5!$ $\text{d}7$ 17 $\text{c}3$ $\text{xe}3$ 18 $\text{fxe}3$ $\text{d}3$ (18 ... $\text{e}4?$ 19 $\text{f}4$ $\text{f}5$ 20 $\text{h}3+-$) 19 $\text{e}1$ $\text{b}5$ 20 $\text{f}2$ $\text{g}6$ 21 e4 \pm Honfi - Kluger, Hungary 1976.

b2) 10 ... 0-0 11 $\text{xe}4$ $\text{g}6$ 12

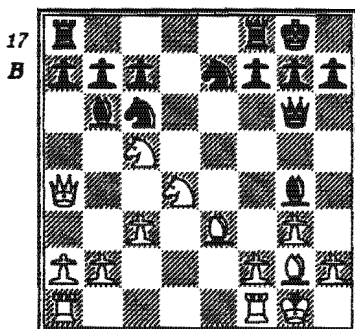
28 Classical Variation: 7 g3

0-0 Qe6 13 c5 Qd5 (Kupreichik - Parma, Dortmund 1975) 14 x b7!±.

10 xe4 g6
11 0-0

It is sensible to get the king to safety. The sortie 11 b5?! is dubious on account of White's exposed central king position; Sveshnikov - Balashov, Moscow 1989, continued: 11 ... 0-0 12 x b6 Qh3!! 13 f6+ xf6 14 xh3 cxb6 15 0-0 Rad8 16 e2 Wh6 17 Qg2 Rd2 18 e4 a6 19 a3 b5.

11 ... Qg4
12 Wa4 0-0
13 c5! (17)



A tremendous move; the knight leaps to an influential square since after 13 ... Qxc5 14 x c6 Qxc6 15 Qxc5 White regains the piece, emerging with a pair of commanding bishops.

13 ... Qe5
14 Qf4 Qxc5
15 Qxe5 Wh5?!

A somewhat better defence is afforded by 15 ... c6 16 ael, when White has to settle for a

slightly better game. The text aims to take the initiative by offering a pawn in exchange for active play.

16 Qxc7 Rac8
17 Qa5

It seems strange to allow the bishop to be stuck on the edge of the board but this is only a temporary measure. The 'natural' 17 Qf4 was what Black planned for: 17 ... g6 18 Qe3 Qe5 with tactical chances of exploiting the light squares based upon ... Qxd4 and ... Qf3+.

17 ... Qd5
18 Qb3 Qf3!
19 Qxf3 Wxf3
20 Qd4

Now that the influential bishop on g2 has been exchanged, White must endeavour to utilise the extra pawn before his draughty king comes under attack. If 20 ael (20 Rad1? Qe3!-) 20 ... b6 21 Qxc5 Qxc5 22 Qb4 Qf4 23 gxf4 Wg4+ 24 Qh1 Wf3+ with perpetual check.

20 ... Wf6
21 Wd7 Qf4
22 Wxb7 Qxd4
23 cxd4 Qe2+
24 Qg2 Wxd4
25 Rfd1

The situation has become somewhat clearer after the flurry of exchanges. White is a clear pawn up and once the knight is ejected from e2, the bishop can be rehabilitated on c3 with control of the a1-h8

diagonal. Black must try to prevent the expansion of White's queenside pawns, while searching for a way to control the a8-h1 diagonal to harass the white king.

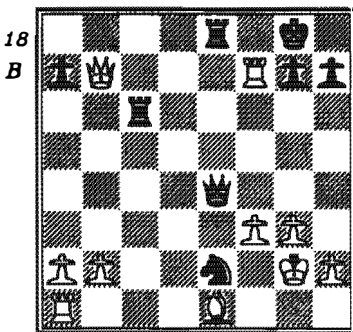
- 25 ... ♖a4
 26 ♕e1 ♜fe8
 27 ♜d7?

The lure of occupying the seventh rank proves far too strong. A calmer approach, blocking the h1-a8 diagonal, was the key to success: 27 ♖b3! ♖xb3 (27 ... ♖e4+ 28 ♖f3±) 28 axb3 ♜c7 29 ♜d2 intending f3 and ♕f2 when White is slightly better according to Sveshnikov.

- 27 ... ♜c6!

White had missed this surprising move which abandons the f-pawn in return for counterplay against the white king.

- 28 ♜xf7 ♖e4+
 29 f3 (18)



No better was 29 ♜f3 ♕f4+! 30 gxf4 ♜g6+ winning the queen.

- 29 ... ♕f4+!

Suddenly Black's forces

stream around the white king.

- 30 gxf4

Not 30 ♜xf4 ♜c2+ 31 ♖h3 ♖xb7-+.

- 30 ... ♜c2+
 31 ♖h3

White has no choice in the matter as other replies lead to instant disaster:

a) 31 ♖h1 ♖xe1+ 32 ♜xe1 ♜xe1 mate.

b) 31 ♜g3 ♖g6+ 32 ♖h3 ♖g2+ 33 ♖h4 ♖xh2+ 34 ♜g5 ♜g2+ 35 ♜f5 ♖h5 mate.

- 31 ... ♖e6+
 32 f5 ♖xf7
 33 ♖xf7+ ♜xf7
 34 ♕c3 ♜e2
 35 ♜d1 ♜xh2+
 36 ♜g3 h5

Sveshnikov considers that 36 ... g5 37 fxg6 ♜xg6 was Black's best winning try as the black king avoids being cut off on the back rank.

- 37 ♜d7+ ♜e8
 38 ♜xa7 g5
 39 fxg6 ♜cg2+
 40 ♜f4 ♜xg6
 41 a4

The connected passed pawns offer White good practical chances. Black will be unable to run the h-pawn to promotion since his rooks will be tied down on the queenside. The game concluded as follows: 41 ... h4 42 a5 h3 43 a6 ♜e2 44 ♜a8+ ♜d7 45 a7 ♜a6 46 ♕d4 h2 47 ♜h8 ♜c6 48 ♜h5?! (48 b4 ♜b5 49 ♕c5 ♜a1 50 ♜f5 ♜ea2 51 a8♖ ♜xa8 52 ♜xh2±) 48 ... ♜e8

49 ♖g3 ♗a4 50 ♕f2 h1 ♗ 51 ♗xh1 ♗g8+ 52 ♗h2 ♗h8+ 53 ♖g2 ♗g8+ 54 ♗f1 ♗a1+ 55 ♖e1 ♗xa7 56 ♗f2 ♗f7 57 ♗h6+ ♗d5 58 ♗h5+ ♗c4 59 ♗h4+ ♗d5 60 ♖c3 ♗gf8 61 ♗d4+ ♗c5 62 ♗d3 ♗e8 63 ♖d2 ♗b8 64 b4+ ♗c4 65 ♗c3+ ♗d4 66 ♗a3 ♗b5 67 ♖e3+ ♗c4 68 ♖c5 ♗b8 69 ♗e3 ♗h8 70 ♗e4+ ♗d3 71 ♗d4+ ♗c3 72 ♖g3 ♗h1 73 f4 ♗f1 ♭-2.

Instead of 8 ... dxe4, Black can also follow a quieter plan, 8 ... ♗xd4, which has been played by Anatoly Karpov amongst others. This variation almost equalises for Black, but accurate play by White can still make things very difficult for his opponent.

**Salov - Karpov
Reggio Emilia 1991/92**

- | | | |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♗f3 | ♗c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♗xd4 | ♖c5 |
| 5 | ♖e3 | ♗f6 |
| 6 | c3 | ♗ge7 |
| 7 | g3 | d5 |
| 8 | ♖g2 | ♗xd4 |

Karpov adopts a plan of liquidation with the idea of eventually isolating the white d-pawn. Apart from 8 ... dxe4, discussed in the previous game, Black has several other possibilities:

a) 8 ... ♗e5!? 9 0-0 ♖g4 10 f3 ♖d7 11 ♗d2 ♖b6 12 a4 a5 13 h3

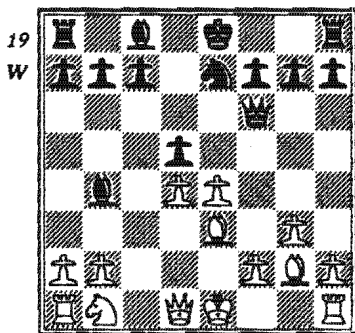
♗g6 14 ♗h2 dxe4 15 ♗xe4 0-0 16 f4 ♗c4 17 ♖c1 ♗f5 18 ♗d3 ♗xd4 19 cxd4 ♗d6 20 g4 f5 21 ♗c5! ♖c8 22 ♖f3= Campora - Gouveia, Buenos Aires 1991.

b) 8 ... ♖xd4 9 cxd4 dxe4 10 ♗c3 0-0 11 ♗xe4 ♗g6 12 0-0 and now:

b1) 12 ... ♖e6 13 ♗c3 (not 13 ♗c5 ♖d5 14 ♗c1 ♖xg2 15 ♗xg2 ♗f5! ♯ Kupreichik - Parma, Dortmund 1975) 13 ... ♗ad8 14 ♗a4 ♗d5 15 ♗xd5 ♖xd5 16 ♖xd5 ♗xd5 17 ♗b3= Timmerman - Pliester, Amsterdam 1982.

b2) 12 ... ♗c5?! 13 ♗c3 ♗xc3 14 bxc3 ♖f5 15 ♖f4 ♗ac8 16 ♗e1 ♗fd8 17 ♗a4± Zhuraviev - Ostrovsky, Rostov-on-Don 1975.

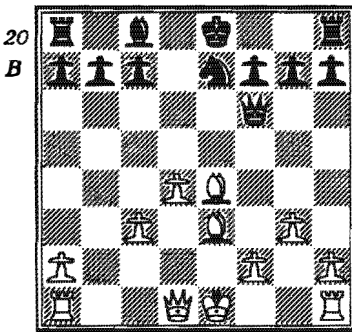
9 cxd4 ♖b4+ (19)



This line of play used to be frowned upon, as White generally managed to exploit his space advantage in the middlegame. The alternative approach gives White slight but persistent pressure: 9 ... ♖b6 10 exd5 ♗f5! 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♗c3 ♖xd4 13 ♗e4 ♗b6 (13 ... ♗e5 14

Qf4 ♖e7 15 g4+-) 14 Qxd4
 ♗xd4 15 ♖c1 Qf5 16 ♖c5!? Qxe4
 17 ♗xd4 Qxg2 18 ♗xg2 ♖ad8 19
 ♗c4 ♗xb2 20 ♖xc7 b5 21 ♗c6!
 ♗xa2!? 22 d6 ♗c4 (22 ... b4 23
 d7 a5 24 ♖ei+-) 23 ♗xc4 bxc4
 24 d7 (Nunn - Smagin, Bundes-
 liga 1990/91) 24 ... f5=.

- 10 ♗c3 Qxc3+
 11 bxc3 dxe4
 12 Qxe4 (20)



12 ... c6!

The point of Karpov's play is revealed, as now the white light-squared bishop is blunted. The alternatives are inferior:

a) 12 ... ♗e6 13 ♗d3 ♗d5 14 Qg2 ♗xe3 15 ♗xe3 ♖b8 16 ♗d2! ♗xe3+ 17 fxe3 ♗e7 18 c4 h5?! (18 ... ♖d8!?) 19 e4 h4 20 e5 ♖h6 21 Qf3 b6 22 g4 ♖g6 23 ♖hg1 ♖g5 24 ♖ge1 Qa6 25 ♗c3 ♖d8 26 a4! ♗c8 27 a5 f5 28 axb6 axb6 29 ♖a7+- Campora - Rubinetti, Buenos Aires 1986.

b) 12 ... Qh3 13 ♖b1 ♗e6 14 ♗d3 ♖d8 15 ♖xb7 0-0 16 ♖xa7 f5 17 Qf3 ♗d5 18 ♗c4 f4! 19 gxf4 ♗h8 20 Qxd5 ♖xd5 21 ♗xc7 ♗g6 22 ♗d2 ♖b5 with an unclear position according to

Botterill and Harding. There is plenty of room for improvement in this analysis, for example 13 ♗h5! ♗e6 14 Qxb7 ♖b8 (14 ... ♖d8 15 ♗e5±) 15 Qf3 intending g4±.

- 13 0-0 0-0
 14 a4

A preliminary measure to prevent the black queenside pawns from ever advancing. If White turns his attention solely to the queenside to keep the c8-bishop at bay, then Black has a comfortable game: 14 ♗b1 h6 (14 ... Qf5 15 Qxf5 ♗xf5 16 ♗xb7 ♗xe3 17 fxe3 ♗e6 with an unclear position) 15 a4 b6 intending ... Qf5±.

- 14 ... Qf5
 15 Qg2 ♖ad8
 16 ♗b3 ♖d7
 17 c4 ♖fd8

Consistent and best according to Karpov himself:

a) 17 ... Qe6 18 ♖ad1 ♖fd8 19 ♖d2±.

b) 17 ... Qg4 18 d5 Qf3 19 Qxa7 Qxg2 20 ♗xg2 cxd5=.

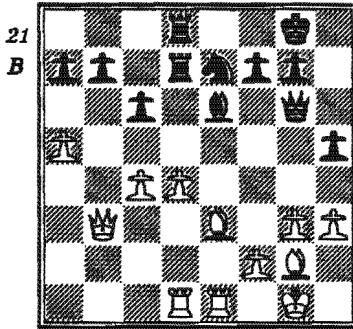
- 18 h3

This is to prevent ... Qg4-f3 since Black would have problems if he could manage to exchange White's prominent light-squared bishop: 18 ♖fd1 Qg4 19 ♖d2 Qf3.

- 18 ... h5
 19 ♖fe1 ♗g6
 20 a5 Qe6
 21 ♖ad1 (21)
 21 ... b5!?

A clever way to simplify

32 Classical Variation: 7 g3



matters and steer the game towards a drawn outcome. If Black wishes to invite complications then 21 ... h4 is also playable: 22 g4 f5 23 f3 ♖f7 24 ♙f1 with an unclear position.

22 axb6 axb6

23 ♖b4

After 23 ♖xb6 ♙xc4 Black can exchange bishops via d5 and emerge with a good knight against a bad bishop.

23 ... b5

24 cxb5 ♙d5

25 ♖c5 cxb5

26 ♖xb5!

Even though this loses the

exchange, White has calculated far enough to see that Black cannot profit by it.

26 ... ♙c3

27 ♖d3 ♙xd1

28 ♖xg6 fxg6

29 ♙xd1 ♙d5

30 ♙xd5+ ♙xd5

31 h4

With no pawn breaks available, Black can make no progress.

31 ... ♙f7

½-½

Conclusion

The variation with 7 g3 is a steady continuation which avoids the highly theoretical main lines associated with 7 ♙c4 and still provides many pitfalls for the unwary black player. However, with best play it is doubtful whether White can achieve anything more than an equal position. Perhaps 7 g3 is most effective as a surprise.

3 Classical Variation: Other Lines With 5 ♖e3

So far we have only discussed the variation following 5 ... ♜f6 in the Classical Variation. In this chapter we look at Black's two main alternatives, 5 ... ♖b6 and 5 ... ♗xd4, both of which promise White good chances if he continues with natural developing moves.

Sveshnikov - B. Ivanovic RSFS - Crna Gora 1987

1	e4	e5
2	♗f3	♗c6
3	d4	exd4
4	♗xd4	♖c5
5	♖e3	♗xd4?!

It is quite unusual for Black to relieve the pressure in the centre so early but White still needs to know how to deal with such a situation. In order to avoid the main lines of 5 ... ♜f6, Black players have also frequently tried 5 ... ♖b6 in recent practice:

a) 6 ♗f5!? ♗xe3 7 ♗xe3 ♗f6 8 ♗c3 0-0 9 ♗d3 ♖e8 10 0-0 ♗b4 11 f4 c6 12 e5! ♜b6 13 exf6 ♜xe3+ 14 ♖h1 ♗xd3 15 ♜g4! g6 16 cxd3 d5 17 ♜h4 ♜d4 18 ♖ae1 ♖f5 19 ♖e5 ♖h8 20 ♖fe1 ♖xe5 21

♖xe5 ♜xd3 22 h3 h5 23 ♗e2 ♖g8 24 ♗g3 g5 25 ♜xh5+ ♖h7 26 ♖xg5 ♖xg5 27 ♜xg5+- Forgarasi - Szabolcsi, Budapest 1992.

b) 6 ♗c3 and now:

b1) 6 ... ♗ge7 7 g3 0-0 8 ♖g2 d6 9 ♗xc6 (9 0-0 ♗xd4 10 ♗xd4 ♗c6 11 ♖xb6 axb6 12 ♗d5± Sveshnikov - Kharitonov, Sochi 1987) 9 ... bxc6 10 ♜d2 ♖e6 11 0-0 ♜b8! 12 ♗a4 ♗xe3 13 ♜xe3 ♜b5 14 b3 c5 15 f4 ♖d7 16 ♖fe1 ♖ae8 17 ♗c3 ♜b4 18 ♗e2 ♖c6 19 ♜d3 a5 20 a4 ♜b7 21 ♗c3± Watson - Adams, English Ch 1991.

b2) 6 ... d6 and now:

b21) 7 g3 ♗f6 8 ♖g2 0-0 9 ♗xc6 bxc6 10 ♖xb6 axb6 11 0-0 ♖a5!? 12 f4- Sveshnikov - Tseitlin, Budapest 1989.

b22) 7 ♗d5 ♗f6 8 ♗xb6 axb6= Mieses - Lasker, St. Petersburg 1909.

b23) 7 ♖e2 ♗f6 8 ♜d2 ♗g4 9 ♖g4 ♖g4 10 f3 ♖d7 11 ♗d5 0-0 12 0-0-0- Spielmann - Tarrasch, Breslau 1912.

b24) 7 ♖c4 ♗f6 8 ♗xc6 bxc6 9 ♖g5 0-0- Mieses - Spielmann, Regensburg 1910.

b25) 7 ♜d2!? ♗f6 8 f3 0-0 9

0-0-0 $\text{O}d7$ 10 $g4$ $\text{O}xd4$ 11 $\text{O}xd4$ $\text{O}c6$ (11 ... $\text{O}e7$!?) 12 $h4$ $\text{O}d7$ 13 $g5$ $\text{O}xd4$ 14 $\text{O}xb6$ 15 $\text{O}h3$! $\text{O}e7$ 16 $f4$ $\text{O}ae8$ 17 $\text{O}del$ $\text{O}d7$ 18 $h5$ $\text{O}xh3$ 19 $\text{O}xh3$ $f6$ 20 $g6$ $h6$ 21 $\text{O}he3$ $c6$ 22 $a4$ $\text{O}c8$ 23 $\text{O}e2$ 1-0 Estrin - Shapovalov, Corr 1974. The knight heads for $f5$ or $e6$ with a crushing position.

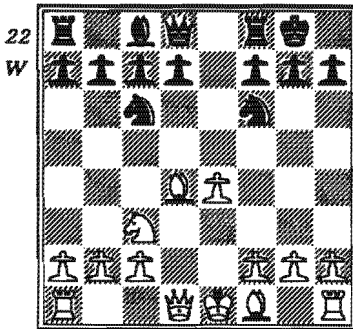
6 $\text{O}xd4$ $\text{O}f6$

This is an attempt to improve upon previous games in which Black exchanged in the centre, allowing White a free rein. After 6 ... $\text{O}xd4$ 7 $\text{O}xd4$ Black can play:

a) 7 ... $\text{O}g5$ 8 $\text{O}c3$ $c6$, 9 $h4$ $\text{O}h6$ 10 $g4$ $\text{O}g6$ 11 $e5$ when White has complete control of the centre, Alekhine - Andersen, Chicago 1933.

b) 7 ... $\text{O}f6$ 8 $e5$ $\text{O}b6$ 9 $\text{O}xb6$ $axb6$ 10 $\text{O}c3$ Tartakower - Schwarzmann, 1929.

7 $\text{O}c3$ 0-0 (22)



8 $\text{O}xf6$

White quickly disposes of the knight on $f6$, which is fundamental to Black's opening strategy of undermining $e4$. In his analysis of the game, upon

which these notes are based, Sveshnikov reveals his opponent's intentions: 8 Oe3 Oe8 9 $\text{O}d3$ $d5$ 10 $exd5$ $\text{O}b4$ with an unclear position, e.g. 11 $\text{O}c4$ $\text{O}g4$ or 11 $\text{O}b5$ $\text{O}d7$ 12 $a3$ $\text{O}bxd5$!

8 ... $\text{O}xf6$

9 $\text{O}d2$

A quiet move maintaining White's spacial advantage. Sveshnikov prepares to castle queenside with a basic plan of $f4$ and $\text{O}c4$ or $\text{O}d3$.

9 ... $d5$!

Black is not willing to resign himself to a passive game, so he gives up a pawn to create active play.

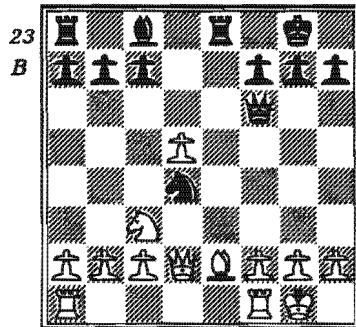
10 $exd5$ $\text{O}e8+$

11 Oe2 $\text{O}d4$

Of course, 11 ... $\text{O}g4$ 12 $f3$ easily rebuffs the pin.

12 0-0 (23)

The situation has changed now that White has the extra pawn, so queenside castling is no longer desirable: 12 0-0-0? $\text{O}xe2+$ 13 $\text{O}xe2$ $\text{O}xf2$ 14 $\text{O}d4$ $\text{O}xd2+$ 15 $\text{O}xd2$ with an equal game.



12 ... Qh3!

This direct method of attack is a misguided attempt to end the game quickly. A more critical way forward for Black is 12 ... ♖xe2+ 13 ♗xe2 ♜xb2 14 ♗d4 which gives White a small advantage, according to Sveshnikov, due to the strong central knight, which limits the scope of the opposing bishop, and the possibility of bringing a rook to the open b-file.

13 f4!

A stereotyped move would have allowed Black to unleash a winning series of tactics:

a) 13 ♖h1? ♜xe2! 14 ♗xe2 ♖xg2+ 15 ♖xg2 (15 ♖g1 ♗f3+) 15 ... ♜f3+ 16 ♖g1 ♗xe2+ and Black is clearly better.

b) 13 gxf3? ♜xe2 14 ♜d3 (14 ♗xe2 ♗f3+) 15 ... ♗f3+ 15 ♖g2 ♗h4+ when the white kingside has been shattered.

13 ... ♜b6

After 13 ... ♜g6 White must still play accurately to avoid a calamity:

a) 14 ♖d3? ♗e2+! (14 ... ♜e2? 15 ♖xg6 ♜xd2 16 ♖e4 with the idea of ♜f2±) 15 ♜xe2 ♜xe2 16 ♖xg6 ♜xg2+ 17 ♖h1 ♜xg6±.

b) 14 ♜f2! ♜xe2 15 ♜xd4 (15 ♗xe2 ♗f3+-+) 15 ... ♜xf2 16 ♜xf2 ♖f5 17 ♜e1± ♖xc2? 18 ♜xa7!+-.

- 14 ♖h1 ♗xe2
- 15 ♗xe2 ♖g4
- 16 ♗g3

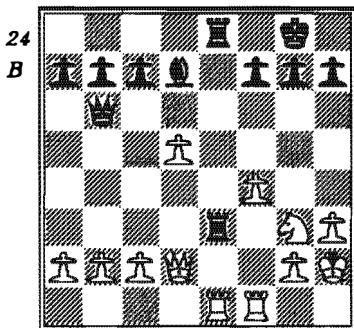
White has emerged from the opening phase with the better

game. His extra pawn is a significant factor since Black only has temporary control of the e-file in compensation.

16 ... ♜e3

If 16 ... h5, intending ... h4 to force the knight to relinquish control of e2, then White can go on the offensive: 17 f5! h4 18 ♜g5± hxg3?? 19 f6 g6 20 ♜h6 followed by mate.

- 17 ♜ae1 ♜ae8
- 18 h3 ♖d7
- 19 ♖h2 (24)



Sveshnikov shows great mastery in his handling of this stage of the game. The key is to slowly improve one's position while awaiting the right moment to exchange pieces.

19 ... g6

Black understandably gives the king an escape hole to avoid any future tactics involving back-rank mate as, for example, in the following sequence: 19 ... ♜xe1 20 ♜xe1 ♜xb2 21 ♜xe8+ ♖xe8 22 ♜e3 ♜b5 (22 ... ♖a4 23 ♜xa7+-; 22 ... ♖b5 23 ♜xa7 h6 24 ♜xb7+-) 23 c4! ♜a4 (23 ... ♜d7 24 ♜xa7) 24

36 Classical Variation: Other Lines With 5 Qe3

♖e5 c5 25 ♠f5 f6 26 ♖e7 ♟f7 27
d6+-.

20 ♖xe3 ♗xe3
21 ♖b4 ♗b6
22 ♗xb6 axb6
23 ♖g1

White has successfully managed to enter an ending with the d5-pawn still intact, and maintains excellent chances of victory. The ultimate aim is to create a passed pawn, but the immediate priority must be to reduce the effectiveness of the opposing rook.

23 ... h5
24 ♖f2 h4
25 ♠e2 ♟b5
26 ♖e1 ♖e4
27 ♖f3

The lure of forking the remaining pieces is rightly rejected: 27 ♠c3? ♖xf4+ 28 ♖e3 ♖f1 with good chances of a draw.

27 ... f5
28 b3 ♟e8
29 ♖f2 ♖f8

30 ♖d1 ♖e7
31 ♖d4 ♖xd4
32 ♠xd4

Black's only chance was to hold onto the rook in hope of a swindle. Now the extra pawn together with influential knight is a lethal combination.

32 ... ♖d6
33 c4 b5
34 ♖e3 bxc4
35 bxc4 ♟f7
36 ♠b5+ ♖c5
37 ♠xc7 ♖xc4
38 d6 1-0

Conclusion

The early alternatives 5 ... ♟xd4 and 5 ... ♟b6 do not offer real chances of equality. These harmless continuations only really have merit for their surprise value. The best course of action for Black in the Classical Variation is 5 ... ♗f6 6 c3 ♠ge7, as in the first two chapters.

4 Classical Variation: 5 ♖b3

The most common alternative to the fashionable 5 ♕e3 is the solid 5 ♖b3 with which White hopes to create a space advantage and prevent the freeing ... d5. With precise play Black should survive the opening stage but there a number of subtle traps which might catch out an unprepared opponent.

van der Wiel - Gulko Amsterdam 1987

- 1 e4 e5
 2 ♖f3 ♖c6
 3 d4 exd4
 4 ♖xd4 ♕c5
 5 ♖b3

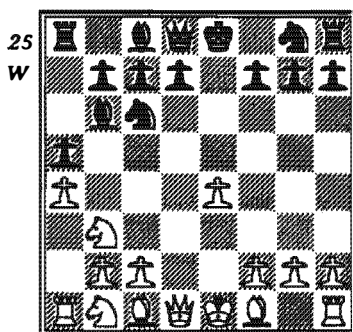
White intends to molest the bishop and strive for a territorial advantage.

- 5 ... ♕b6
 6 a4

Gaining space on the queen-side and applying direct pressure to the bishop. The immediate 6 ♖c3 is considered in the illustrative game Atkinson - Brander later in this chapter.

- 6 ... a5?! (25)

Of course, Black needs to create a hole on a7 for his



bishop but this is not the correct way of implementing this plan as the a5-pawn often becomes a vulnerable target. More reliable methods of meeting the threat to the bishop are 6 ... a6, and 6 ... ♗f6 7 ♗e2 a6, which are featured later in this chapter.

- 7 ♖c3

The superficially attractive 7 ♖a3 intending to exchange the bishop allows Black to equalize without difficulty: 7 ... ♖f6! 8 ♖c4 (8 ♕d3 d5!) 8 ... d5 9 ♖xb6 cxb6 10 exd5 ♗xd5 11 ♗xd5 ♖xd5 12 ♕d3 0-0 13 0-0 ♖db4= van der Wiel - Matera, Lone Pine 1979.

- 7 ... d6

At this point Black has sometimes deviated but White

should still be able to maintain a slight advantage:

a) 7 ... ♗f6 8 ♗e2 ♖ge7 and now:

a1) 9 ♖e3 and now:

a11) 9 ... ♖b4 10 0-0-0 0-0 11 f4 (11 g3 ♖xe3+ 12 ♗xe3± Parma) 11 ... d5 12 e5 ♖xe3+ 13 ♗xe3 ♗g6 14 ♖d2 b6± Musil - Ilievsky, Yugoslav Ch 1968.

a111) 9 ... ♖xe3 10 ♗xe3 0-0 11 0-0-0 d6?! 12 ♖b5! ♖e5 13 f4 ♖g4 14 ♗d2 ♖d7 15 h3 ♖xb5 16 ♖xb5 ♖h6 17 g4 1-0 Benko - Risselen, Malaga 1969.

a2) 9 ♖d5 ♖xd5 10 exd5+ ♖e7 11 h4! h6 12 g4 d6 13 ♖g2 ♖d7 14 c3 0-0-0 15 ♖e3 ♖xe3 16 fxe3 ♗e5 17 0-0-0± Stupina - Viner, USSR 1978.

b) 7 ... ♖ge7 8 ♖g5 f6 9 ♖h4 0-0 10 ♗d2 d6 11 0-0-0 ♖e6 12 f4 (12 ♖d5! is a suggestion by Keres) 12 ... ♗e8 13 ♖f2 ♖xf2 14 ♗xf2 ♗f7± Radulov - Westerman, Raach 1969.

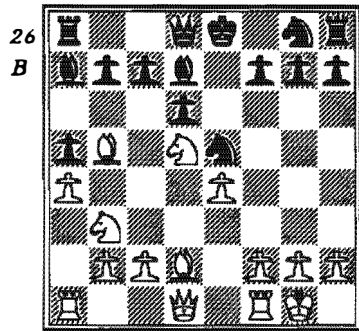
8 ♖d5 ♖a7
9 ♖b5 ♖d7
10 0-0 ♖e5

The attempt to oust the dominant knight at d5 fails to work: 10 ... ♖ce7 (10 ... ♖ge7 11 ♖g5!) 11 ♗g4! ♖g6 (11 ... c6 12 ♗xg7 ♖g6 13 ♖f4+-) 12 ♗xd7+ ♗xd7 13 ♖xc7+-.

11 ♖d2! (26)

White boldly allows the knight and bishop to be forked in return for a strong initiative. This new idea is a clear improvement on the older continuation: 11 ♖xd7+ ♗xd7 12

♖e3 ♖xe3 13 ♖xe3 ♖f6 14 ♖el 0-0 15 ♖d5= Letelier - Bronstein, Mar del Plata 1960.



11 ... ♖f6

If Black were to take up the gauntlet of White's opening novelty then the game would come to an abrupt halt. For example: 11 ... c6 12 ♖xa5 b6 (12 ... ♗h4 13 ♖c7+ ♗e7 14 ♖b4+-; 12 ... ♖xf2+ 13 ♖xf2 ♖xe5 14 ♖xa5 ♗xa5 15 ♖c3 cxb5 16 axb5+-) 13 ♖c3 and now Black may try:

a) 13 ... cxb5?! 14 f4 ♖g6 (14 ... bxa4 15 fxe5 axb3 16 e6!+-) 15 ♖xg7 h6 16 f5 ♖h7 17 fxg6 ♖xg7 18 gxh7+ ♖xf7 19 ♗h5 ♖e6 20 ♖d4+-.

b) 13 ... f6 14 ♖xe5! fxe5 (14 ... dxe5?! 15 ♖c4 cxd5 16 ♗xd5 ♖h6 17 ♖fd1+-) 15 f4! cxd5 (15 ... exf4 16 ♖d4; 15 ... cxb5 16 fxe5 intending ♗f3+-) 16 fxe5 with a clear advantage according to van der Wiel.

12 ♖xa5 ♖xd5
13 exd5

The simplest reply, but White could also investigate another treatment of the posi-

tion: 13 ♙xd7+ ♚xd7 (13 ... ♚xd7?! 14 ♚xd5 ♚h4 [14 ... ♚c8!]) 15 ♚xb7 ♘g4 16 ♚xc7+ ♚e6 17 ♚c4+ ♚e7 18 h3+-) 14 ♚xd5 c6 15 ♚d1 0-0 with advantage to White (van der Wiel).

13 ... ♙xb5
14 axb5 0-0

No better is 14 ... ♚d7 15 b6! ♙xb6 16 ♙xb6 ♙xa1 17 ♚xa1 cxb6 18 f4 ♘g6 19 ♚a8+ ♚d8 20 ♙e1+ ♚e7 21 ♚xb7+-.

15 ♙c3 ♚g5?

A pawn down, Black activates his queen in a futile bid for compensation. In fact, every possibility leaves White in a superior position:

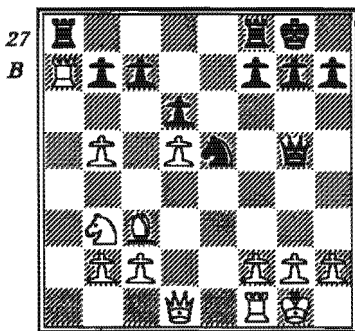
a) 15 ... ♚d7? 16 ♙xe5 dxe5 17 c4.

b) 15 ... ♙e8 16 h3.

c) 15 ... ♚h4 16 ♙d4! ♙xd4 17 ♚xd4.

16 ♙xa7! (27)

Suddenly, White unveils a tactical trick to destroy Black's lingering hopes.



16 ... ♙xa7
17 f4 ♚h6
18 ♚d4!

White chooses to pile on the pressure, although 18 fxe5 would also be enough to guarantee victory in the long term.

18 ... ♘g4
19 h3 ♙aa8
20 hxg4 ♙fe8

The threat of mate on g7 severely reduces Black's options and White can easily use his material advantage to provoke further kingside concessions.

21 ♘d2 ♙e2
22 ♘e4 1-0

Black resigned in view of the threat of 23 g5 ♚g6 24 f5+- e.g. 22 ... f6 23 ♘g3+-.

Instead of 6 ... a5, most Black players prefer the more solid 6 ... a6. However, even this is not bereft of pitfalls for the unwary, as the following game shows.

S. Arkell - Gallagher
Hastings 1987/88

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 d4 exd4
4 ♘xd4 ♙c5
5 ♘b3 ♙b6
6 a4 a6
7 ♘c3 d6

Here 7 ... ♚f6 would transpose after 8 ♚e2 to the variation 6 ... ♚f6 7 ♚e2 a6 8 ♘c3 which is discussed in the game Djurovic - Rajic. Also worthy of consideration are:

a) 7 ... ♘ge7 and now:

a1) 8 ♘g5 and now:

a11) 8 ... 0-0?! 9 ♘d5 ♖a7 10 ♘f6+! gxf6 11 ♖xf6 ♗e8 12 ♗h5 ♘d8 13 ♗h6 ♘e6 14 0-0-0 ♖xf2 15 ♗d3 ♘g6 16 ♗h3 ♖h4 17 ♗xh4 ♘xh4 18 ♗xh4 1-0 Botterill - Thomas, British Ch 1974.

a12) 8 ... f6 9 ♖h4 0-0 10 ♗d2 d6 11 0-0-0 ♖d7 12 f4 ♗b8 13 ♘d5 ♘xd5 14 exd5 ♘e7 15 a5 ♖a7 16 ♖d3 b6 17 ♗he1 ♗e8 18 ♗e2±.

a2) 8 ♗e2 0-0 9 ♖g5 d6 10 ♘d5 ♖a7 11 0-0-0± Pasman - Unzicker, Beer-Sheva 1984.

a3) 8 g3 d6 9 ♖g2 0-0 10 0-0 f5 11 ♘d5 ♖a7 12 a5 fxe4 13 ♖xe4 ♖f5 14 ♗a4 ♗d7 15 ♖e3 ♖xe3 16 ♘xe3 ♖xe4 17 ♗xe4 ♗ad8 18 c3 ♘f5 19 ♘d5= Hort - Unzicker, Bundesliga 1990/91.

b) 7 ... ♘f6 8 ♖g5 d6 and now:

b1) 9 a5!? ♖a7 10 ♖e2 ♖e6 11 0-0 h6 12 ♖h4 g5 13 ♖g3 h5 14 h3± Agzamov - Ivanov, USSR 1974.

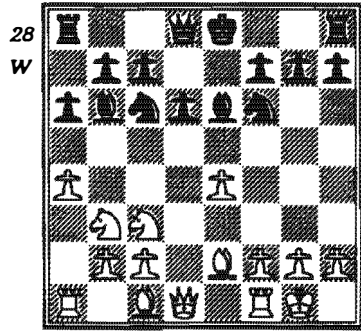
b2) 9 ♗e2 h6 10 ♖h4 ♘d4 11 ♘xd4 ♖xd4 12 ♗d2 ♖e5 (12 ... ♖a7? 13 ♘d5) 13 ♖d3 ♖e6 14 f4 ♖xc3 15 ♗xc3 ♘xe4 16 ♖xd8 ♘xc3 17 ♖xc7 ♘d5 18 ♖xd6 ♗d8 19 ♖e5 f6 20 f5 and White is slightly better according to Botterill and Harding.

8 ♖e2 ♘f6
9 0-0 ♖e6?! (28)

A more logical move is 9 ... h6, ruling out any threat of ♖g5.

10 ♘d5! ♖xd5

Black has little choice but to



trade off minor pieces, otherwise his position would deteriorate even further:

a) 10 ... ♖a7 11 ♖g5 ♖xd5 12 exd5 ♘e5 13 c4±.

b) 10 ... ♘xe4 11 ♖xb6 cxb6 12 ♘d4 ♘xd4 13 ♗xd4 ♘f6 14 ♖f4 d5 15 ♗b4 and White is better according to Susan Arkell.

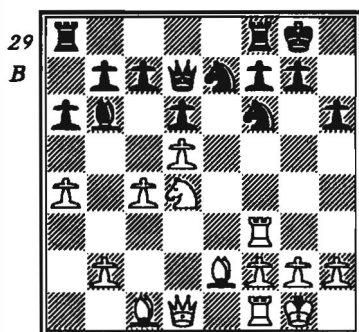
11 exd5 ♘e7
12 c4

Maintaining the strongpoint at d5. It is easier for White to form a plan in this position since her space advantage enables easy mobilization behind the pawn shelter. Having given up the bishop pair Black faces a difficult task as there are no obvious targets in the opposing camp.

12 ... 0-0
13 ♘d4 h6
14 ♗a3!

The rook is poised to swing across to the kingside to aid the impending assault. This is a regular feature of lines involving an advance of the a-pawn and is often overlooked by the opponent.

14 ... ♖d7
15 ♖f3 (29)



The threat of 16 ♕xh6 gxh6 17 ♖xf6 is transparent, but Black is forced to further disrupt his piece formation to deal with it.

15 ... ♗e4
16 ♖f4 ♗g5

If 16 ... ♗c5 17 b3! and Black's forces are congested on the queenside while White is well placed to conduct a lethal attack.

17 h4 ♗h7
18 ♕d3

Now White's control of the b1-h7 diagonal becomes an important issue. Black must try to block it while White can even consider the direct approach of ♕b1 and ♖c2 to add to the pressure.

18 ... ♗g6
19 ♕f5 ♖e7

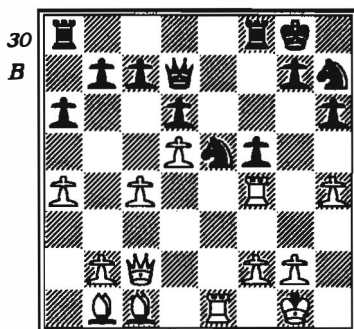
After 19 ... ♖d8? 20 ♕xg6 fxe6 21 ♗e6 White wins.

20 ♖e1 ♗e5
21 ♕b1 ♕xd4
22 ♖xd4

White has to be careful to

avoid the diabolical trap 22 ♖xd4? ♗f3+! 23 ♖xf3 ♖xe1+-+.

22 ... ♖d7
23 ♖c2 f5
24 ♖f4 (30)



Now that White has managed to force a concession with 23 ... f5, this weak point is attacked by the roving rook.

24 ... ♖ae8
25 ♖e3

A necessary precaution in view of the dangerous 25 ... ♗f3+.

25 ... ♗g6

The f-pawn must fall whatever precautionary measures are taken: 25 ... g6 26 h5 ♗f6 27 hxg6 ♗e4 28 f3 and Black is busted.

26 ♖xf5 ♖xe3
27 ♕xe3 ♗f6

The grim reality of Black's position has become somewhat clearer. He is a pawn down and facing an attack based on the two powerful bishops. The immediate problem is that 27 ... ♗xh4 is well met by 28 ♖f4! g5 29 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 30 ♕xh7+-+.

28 h5 ♗e5

42 Classical Variation: 5 ♖b3

29 ♖d4 ♖e8
30 f3

This further restricts the activity of the knights and prepares a future g4 to safeguard the h5-pawn.

30 ... ♖b6
31 b4 ♜xc4
32 ♜xf6!

A crushing response to Black's idea of 32 ♜xc4 ♖e1+ 33 ♜h2 ♜xb1. Now after 32 ... gxf6 33 ♜g6+ is decisive.

32 ... ♖e1+
33 ♜f2 ♜xb1
34 ♜g6 1-0

In order to avoid a pin on the king's knight after 8 ... ♜f6, Black often develops this piece on e7 instead. This idea has been played by the former World Champion Mikhail Tal, amongst others, as we see in the next game.

**B. Ivanovic - Tal
USSR 1979**

1 e4 e5
2 ♜f3 ♜c6
3 d4 exd4
4 ♜xd4 ♖c5
5 ♜b3 ♖b6
6 a4 a6

The adventurous 6 ... ♜h4 is flawed as the queen can be rebuffed with gain of tempi. After 7 ♜e2 Black may play:

a) 7 ... ♜f6 8 a5 ♜d4 9 ♜xd4 ♖xd4 10 ♜a4! (10 c3 ♖c5 11 b4 ♖e7 12 ♜d2± Michel - Mengar-

ini, St. Martin 1991) 10 ... ♖c5 11 ♜c4 d6 12 e5+- Estrin - Berezin, USSR 1953.

b) 7 ... d6 8 a5 ♖g4 9 ♜d2 ♖c5 10 ♖b5 ♜ge7 11 ♜xc5 dxc5 12 0-0 0-0 13 c3 ♖e6 14 ♜a3± Damjanovic - Kolarov, 1964.

7 ♜c3 d6
8 ♖e2

White's other possibilities do not make much of an impression:

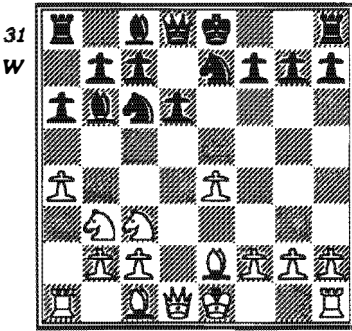
a) 8 ♜d5 ♖a7 9 ♖e2 ♜f6 10 0-0 (10 ♖g5? ♜f2+ 11 ♜f1 ♜xd5! 12 ♜xd5 f6 is slightly better for Black according to Keres) 10 ... ♜xd5 11 exd5 ♜e5 12 ♜d4 0-0 (Pfleger - Keres, Tallinn 1973) 13 ♖e3=.

b) 8 ♜e2 ♖e6 9 ♖e3 ♖xe3 10 ♜xe3 ♖xb3! 11 cxb3 ♜f6 12 ♖c4 0-0 13 0-0 ♜b4 14 ♜ad1 ♜e7 15 ♜d2 a5 16 ♜fe1 ♜fe8 17 f3 ♜ad8 18 ♜f2 c6 19 ♜e2 ♜d7 20 ♜b6 ♜d8 21 ♜xd8 ♜exd8 22 ♜ed2 d5 23 exd5 ♜bxd5 24 ♖xd5 ♜xd5 ½-½ Botterill - Perkins, British Ch 1974.

c) 8 a5 ♖a7 9 ♖e2 h6 10 0-0 ♜f6 11 ♜h1 0-0 12 f4 ♜e8 13 ♖f3 ♖e6 14 ♜a4 ♖d7 15 h3 ♜b8 16 ♜h2 ♜e7 17 ♜a1 ♜g6 18 g3 ♖c6 19 ♜d3 ♜f8 20 ♖d2 ½-½ Ljubojevic - Portisch, Amsterdam 1981.

8 ... ♜ge7 (3!)

Black can also try the relatively untested 8 ... ♜h4!? 9 0-0 ♜ge7 10 a5 ♖a7 11 ♜a4 (11 ♜d5!?) 11 ... ♜e5 12 ♜d4 ♖d7 13 ♜a3 0-0= Zihitenev - Lhagkva, Moscow 1972.



- 9 ♖g5 ♖e6
10 a5 ♖a7
11 ♖d5

White increases the pressure by advancing his knight, exploiting the pin.

- 11 ... h6

The most accurate continuation. After the weaker 11 ... ♖xd5?! 12 exd5 ♖e5 13 c4 White has much the better position with play similar to the main game S. Arkell - Gallagher.

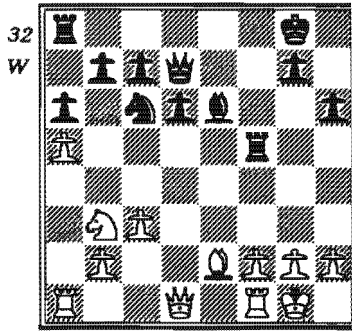
- 12 ♖e3 ♖xe3
13 ♖xe3 0-0
14 0-0 ♖d7
15 c3

White now embarks on a plan of moving the other knight into the centre to try and curtail ... f5. By including the move c3 White keeps the option of playing cxd4 if Black were to exchange on d4, increasing his central control.

- 15 ... f5

Also possible is the preliminary 15 ... ♖ae8, in order to avoid the game continuation.

- 16 exf5 ♖xf5
17 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 (32)



- 18 ♖d4!

This fine pawn sacrifice is the only way for White to gain the initiative.

- 18 ... ♖xd4

Black declines the offered material in view of the activity that White's pieces would enjoy, and in particular the influence of the white bishop when the light-squares around the king are so weak. For example: 18 ... ♖xa5 19 ♖xa5 ♖xa5 20 ♖xe6 ♖xe6 21 ♖e1! ♖f7 (21 ... ♖e8? 22 ♖c4!+-) 22 ♖h5 ♖b3 23 ♖f3 (with the idea of h3 and ♖e7) 23 ... ♖c6 (23 ... ♖f8?? 24 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 25 ♖e8 mate) 24 ♖f5, intending 25 f4, when White stands better since the black queen must control f7, e.g. 24 ... ♖xb2 25 ♖f7+ ♖h8 26 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 27 ♖xe8+ ♖h7 28 ♖g6 mate.

- 19 ♖xd4 ♖d5
20 ♖e4 c6
21 ♖fe1

White chooses to contest the control of the e-file now that Black has temporarily staked a claim on the d-file.

44 Classical Variation: 5 ♖b3

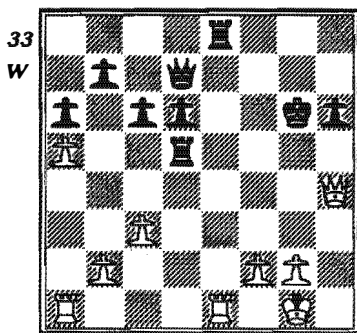
21 ... ♕f5
22 ♖f4 g5

In his desire to complicate matters Tal goes astray. This pawn lunge tries to limit the damage of the impending ♖c4 but fails to help. The alternative was also unattractive, however: 22 ... ♖h8 23 ♖c4 ♖c5 24 b4 ♖e5 25 ♖xe5 dxe5 26 ♖xe5 winning a pawn. The long-term drawback of 22 ... g5 is that the black king is exposed.

23 ♖g3 ♖h7
24 h4 gxh4

Also very unpleasant was 24 ... ♖g8 25 ♖c4 gxh4 26 ♖xh4 ♖g4 27 ♖e7+-.

25 ♖xh4 ♖e8
26 ♖h5! ♖g6
27 ♖xg6+ ♖xg6 (33)



28 f4!

A timely advance to prevent 28 ... ♖de5, after which the doubled rooks would offer reasonable drawing chances.

28 ... ♖d3

If 28 ... ♖f5 then White is able to infiltrate the heart of Black's camp: 29 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 30 ♖e1 ♖d7 31 ♖e7 and 32 ♖g4+-.

29 f5+! ♖h7
30 ♖h5

The attack has rapidly become decisive. With the help of the f-pawn White is able to take control of the e-file and simultaneously threatens 31 ♖g6+.

30 ... ♖xe1+
31 ♖xe1 ♖g3
32 f6 1-0

Instead of 6 ... a5 or 6 ... a6, Black can also delay the defence of his bishop by launching a counter-attack with 6 ... ♖f6. Of course, after 7 ♖e2 Black still has to make a decision about his bishop but the addition of the two queen moves leads to sharper play as White usually attempts to use the e-file for an early attack but cannot immediately bring his king's bishop into play.

Djurovic - Rajic Novi Sad Open 1988

1 e4 e5
2 ♖f3 ♖c6
3 d4 exd4
4 ♖xd4 ♖c5
5 ♖b3 ♖b6
6 a4 ♖f6

This queen move is Black's most active choice here.

7 ♖e2 a6 (34)

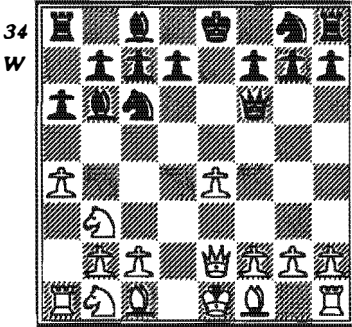
Black's alternatives are less attractive:

a) 7 ... a5 8 ♖c3 ♖ge7 9 ♖e3 and now:

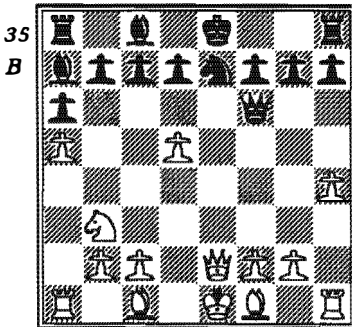
a) 9 ... ♘b4 10 0-0-0! 0-0 11 g3 ♙xe3 12 ♗xe3 d6 13 ♙g2 ♙e6 14 ♘d4 ♘ec6 15 f4± Johansson - Jansson, Corr 1969.

a2) 9 ... ♙xe3 10 ♗xe3 0-0 11 0-0-0 d6 12 ♙e2 ♙e6 13 f4 ♙xb3 14 cxb3± Prandstetter - Hernandez, Cienfuegos 1983.

b) 7 ... ♘ge7 8 a5 ♘d4 9 ♘xd4 ♙xd4 10 c3 ♙c5! (10 ... ♙e5 11 g3 c6 12 ♙g2 0-0 13 0-0 d5 14 a6! bxa6 15 exd5 ♘xd5 16 ♘d2 ♙c7 17 ♘e4±) 11 e5!? ♗c6 12 ♘d2 a6± Damjanovic - Barczay, Tallinn 1969.



- 8 ♘c3 ♘ge7
9 ♘d5 ♘xd5
10 exd5+ ♘e7
11 a5 ♙a7
12 h4 (35)



This is one of the most crucial positions in the theory of the Scotch. The White plan is based upon an aggressive advance of his kingside pawns, using his space advantage to manoeuvre his pieces to their optimum squares. Usually White will develop his queen's rook via a4, although this does have the drawback that the white king will remain in the centre. Clearly Black's counterplay will revolve around the exposed white d5-pawn, particularly if White advances on the kingside without adequate preparation.

12 ... h6

To prevent 13 ♙g5. Other moves are risky for Black:

a) 12 ... 0-0? 13 ♙g5 ♗xb2 14 ♙xe7 ♖e8 15 ♗d1! d6 16 ♙f6 ♗xe2 17 ♙xb2 ♗xf2 18 ♙d4+- Barczay - Sapi, Budapest 1964.

b) 12 ... d6 13 ♖a4! and now:

b1) 13 ... ♙d7? 14 ♖f4 ♙f5 (14 ... ♗e5 15 ♖e4 ♗f6 16 ♙g5) 15 g4 0-0 16 gxf5+- Batrikov - Formin, USSR 1955.

b2) 13 ... 0-0 14 ♖f4 ♙f5 15 g4 ♖ae8 16 gxf5 (16 ♗d1 ♗e5 17 ♗xe5 dxe5 18 ♖xf5 ♘xf5 19 gxf5+- Bebuchuk - Bakulin, USSR 1963) 16 ... ♘xd5 17 ♖e4 ♙xf2+ 18 ♗d1 ♘e3+ 19 ♙xe3 ♖xe4 20 ♗xf2 ♗xb2 21 ♙d3+- van der Wiel - Ree, Hilversum 1987.

b3) 13 ... ♗f5 14 ♖e4! ♙xf2+ 15 ♗d1 ♗xd5+ 16 ♘d2 ♙f5 17 c4! (17 ♖xe7+ ♗f8 18 ♗xf2 ♙xe7 19 ♙e2

♣f8 20 ♠f1 ♣g6 21 ♣f3 ♣f5♠
 Pantazi - Balshan, Ybbs 1968) 17
 ... ♣c5 (17 ... ♣xa5 18 ♠xe7+ ♣f8
 19 g4+-) 18 ♠xe7+ ♣d8 19 ♠e4
 (intending 20 ♠f4 and b4) 19 ...
 ♣xe4 20 ♣xe4 ♣d4+ 21 ♣c2
 ♠e8 22 ♣xf2 ♣xe4+ 23 ♣d3 ♣c6
 24 ♣xf7 ♣xg2+ 25 ♣c3 h6 26
 ♠f1 b5 27 ♣g6 ♣g3+ 28 ♠f3
 ♣e1+ 29 ♣d2 b4+ 30 ♣c2 b3+ 31
 ♠xb3 ♠e7 32 ♣f8+ 1-0 Stoica -
 Orłowski, Poland 1970.

b4) 13 ... ♣f5 14 g4 ♣g6 15 h5
 0-0-0 16 ♣g2 ♠he8 17 ♣e3 and
 White is slightly better accord-
 ing to Kaikamdzhovov.

c) 12 ... ♣d6 13 ♣g5 (13 ♠a4!
 0-0 [13 ... ♣xd5 14 ♠e4] 14 ♣f4)
 13 ... h6 14 ♣d2 ♣xd5 15 0-0-0
 ♣e6 16 ♣f3 ♣f6 17 ♣g3 ♣xf2 18
 ♣xc7 ♣d5 19 ♣c4 ♣e6 20 ♠h3
 0-0 21 g4! with good play on
 the kingside, Timofeyeva -
 Dmitrieva, USSR 1958.

13 ♣d2

This is currently the most
 topical continuation. The main
 alternative, 13 ♠a4, has ex-
 perience bouts of fluctuating
 popularity but does not appear
 to set Black as many problems
 as 13 ♣d2:

a) 13 ... ♣f5? 14 ♠f4 ♣xd5 15
 ♠e4 ♣c5 16 ♣xc5 ♣xc5 17 ♣d2!
 ♣xc2 (17 ... ♣d6 18 ♠h3 ♣d8 19
 ♠d3 ♣f6 20 ♣c3+-) 18 ♠xe7+
 ♣d8 19 ♠e3 ♣xb2 20 ♣c3 ♣b1+
 21 ♣d1 1-0 Botterill - Bellinger,
 London 1973.

b) 13 ... ♣d8!? 14 g4 (14 ♠f4!?)
 14 ... ♠e8 15 ♠e4 ♣g6 16 ♣g2?!
 f5! 17 h5 ♣f7 18 gxf5 d6 19 0-0

♣g8 20 ♠xe8+ ♣xe8 21 ♣xe8+
 ♣xe8♠ (White's pawns are
 weak) Hultquist - Wikstrom,
 Corr 1973.

c) 13 ... 0-0 14 g4 and now:

c1) 14 ... ♣d6 15 g5 ♣xd5 (15 ...
 h5 16 ♣g2 ♣xd5 17 0-0 ♣c6 18
 ♠e4 and White is winning
 according to Botterill and
 Harding; 15 ... ♣xd5 16 ♣g2) 16
 ♣xe7! ♣xh1 17 gxh6 ♣g1 18
 ♠f4+-.

c2) 14 ... d6 15 g5 ♣e5 (15 ...
 ♣f5! 16 ♣g2 ♣xd5 17 ♣d4 ♣e5
 18 ♣xe5 dx5 19 ♣xd5 ♣xd4 20
 c3 which Botterill and Harding
 assess as equal) 16 ♠e4 ♣xd5 17
 c4 ♣c6 18 ♠g1 ♣g6 19 gxh6 ♣f5
 20 ♣g2 ♣a4 21 h5 ♣xb3 22 hxg6
 ♣xg6 23 hxg7 ♣xg7 24 ♣d2 ♣a4
 25 ♣c3+ f6 26 ♠e7+ ♠f7 27
 ♣xf6+- Bechuk - Sazonov,
 USSR 1962.

c3) 14 ... ♣xd5 15 g5 ♣d8!? 16
 gxh6 ♠e8 17 ♠e4 ♠xe4 18 ♣xe4
 ♣e7 19 ♣xe7 ♣xe7 20 hxg7 d6!
 (20 ... ♣xg7? 21 ♠g1+ ♣h8 22
 ♣c4 gives White a winning
 advantage according to Botterill
 and Harding) 21 ♣d3 ♣f5 22 ♣e3
 ♣xd3 23 cxd3 ♣f5 24 ♣d2
 (Hultquist - Kretschmar, Corr
 1982) 24 ... ♣xe3+-.

13 ... 0-0

The absolute test of White's
 plan is to snatch the b-pawn: 13
 ... ♣xb2 14 ♠h3 ♣xc2 15 ♠c1 (15
 ♠a4!? Brat) 15 ... ♣f5 16 ♣b4
 ♣xf2+ 17 ♣d1 ♣xd5+ 18 ♠d3 ♣e6
 19 ♣xf2± (Black only has
 remote chances of mobilizing
 his pawns in any endgame)

Klein - Ahman, Corr 1973. It might be more prudent to play 16 ... d6 17 ♖xc7 ♕d7 with an unclear position according to Botterill and Harding. However, White should be able to make use of his tremendous lead in development.

Another idea for Black is queenside castling after the sequence 13 ... d6 14 ♕c3 ♖f4, as considered in the next game, Djurovic - Fercec.

14 ♕c3 ♖d6?

15 0-0-0

Now White has excellent attacking chances; he can menacingly push forward his g- and h-pawns, while the rest of his pieces are well coordinated to force a path through to the king. In contrast, Black has grave difficulties developing, and is forced to capture the hot d-pawn.

15 ... ♗xd5

16 ♖xd5!

A wonderfully direct concept; White eliminates the knight, relying on the strength of the dark-squared bishop to undertake a mating attack.

16 ... ♖xd5

17 ♖g4 g6

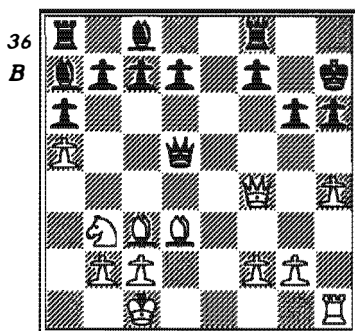
The obvious 17 ... f6 fails to 18 ♕c4+-.

18 ♖f4 ♗h7

19 ♕d3 (36)

White dominates the whole board. The threat of 20 h5 forces Black into a desperate and ultimately futile barrage of

checks which only postpone the inevitable.



19 ... ♖xg2

20 ♖f6 ♖xh1+

21 ♗d2 ♕e3+

22 fxe3 ♖h2+

23 ♗d1 ♖h1+

24 ♗d2 ♖h2+

25 ♗c1 ♖g1+

26 ♕f1 ♖xe3+

27 ♗b1 ♖xc3

Now that the checks have run out, Black is obliged to give up his queen.

28 bxc3 d6

29 ♗d4 ♕g4

30 ♕c4 c5

31 ♕xf7 1-0

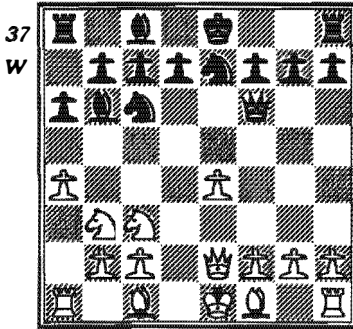
Having seen the power of White's attack after the careless 13 ... 0-0 14 ♕c3 ♖d6, we can now move on to a look at Black's best defence, 13 ... d6 14 ♕e3 ♖f4, as in the next game.

Djurovic - Fercec
Novi Sad Open 1988

1 e4 e5

2 ♗f3 ♗c6

- 3 d4 exd4
 4 ♘xd4 ♖c5
 5 ♘b3 ♗b6
 6 a4 ♜f6
 7 ♜e2 a6
 8 ♘c3 ♘ge7 (37)



9 ♘d5

This is the most accurate move in this position as after 9 a5 White can only hope for a transposition at best:

a) 9 ... ♗a7 and now:

a1) 10 ♘d5 transposes to the main game after 10 ... ♘xd5 11 exd5+ ♘e7.

a2) 10 ♗e3 ♖xe3 11 ♜xe3 d6 (11 ... 0-0 12 ♖d3 d6 13 0-0 ♗e6 14 ♘d2 ♖ad8 15 f4 ♜h6! 16 ♜f2 f5 17 g3 ♘b4! ♣ Musil - Donner, Busum 1968) 12 0-0-0 0-0 13 ♗e2 ♗e6 14 ♘d5 ♖xd5 15 exd5 ♘e5 16 f4 ♘5g6 17 g3 ♖fe8 18 ♜f2 ♘f5 19 ♖d3 ♘e3 20 ♖d2 ♖e7 21 ♜f3 ♖ae8 22 c3 ♣-♣ Ljubojevic - Karpov, Bugojno 1980.

a3) 10 h4 ♘d4 11 ♘xd4 ♖xd4 12 ♖h3 d6 13 ♖g5 ♜e5 14 ♖g3 ♗e6 15 f4 ♜c5 16 ♗xe7 ♜xe7 17 f5 ♖c4 18 ♜f3= Nechaev - Matseak, Kirghizian Ch 1966.

b) 9 ... ♘d4 10 e5 ♜g6 11 ♘d4 ♖xd4 12 ♖a4 ♖xc3+ 13 bxc3 0-0 ♣ Neishtadt - Golubev, USSR 1955.

- 9 ... ♘xd5
 10 exd5+ ♘e7
 11 a5 ♗a7
 12 h4 h6
 13 ♖d2

Apart from 13 ♖a4 (see the notes to the previous game) White has also experimented with the aggressive-looking 13 g4, although it appears that White cannot really hope for more than equality with this:

a) 13 ... 0-0?! 14 g5 ♜f5 15 gxf6 ♖xf2+? 16 ♜xf2 ♜e4+ 17 ♜e3 ♜xh1 18 ♜xe7+- Skegina - Postnikova, USSR 1963.

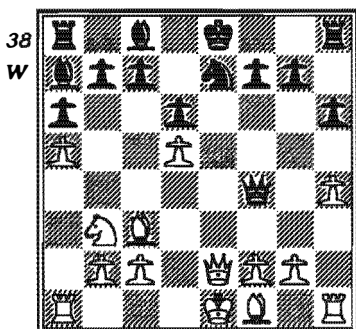
b) 13 ... ♜d6! 14 ♖d2 ♜xd5 15 ♖h3 ♜e6 16 ♗e3 d6 17 0-0-0 0-0 18 ♜d2 ♖xe3 19 ♖xe3 ♜g6 20 g5 hxg5 21 hxg5 ♜xg5 22 ♖d3 ♘g6 (after 22 ... ♘f5! Black is slightly better according to Aronin) 23 ♖h1 ♖d7 24 ♜b1 ♖c6 25 ♖eh3 f6 (25 ... ♜xd2?? 26 ♖h8+ ♘xh8 27 ♖h7 mate) 26 ♜xg5 f5 27 ♖xg6 ♖xh1 28 ♖xh1 ♖xf2 ♣-♣ Padevsky - Reshevsky, Tel Aviv 1964.

Harmless is 13 ♖h3 (13 ♖g5? hxg5 14 hxg5 ♜xf2+!-) 13 ... d6 14 ♖g3 0-0 15 c4 ♖d7 ♣ Sefc - Beni, Prague 1956.

- 13 ... d6
 14 ♖c3

Here 14 ♖a4 is tame as 14 ... ♖f5 cancels out any attacking notions, e.g. 15 g4 ♖xc2 16 ♖c3 ♜xf2+-+ or 15 ♖c3 ♜g6 16 ♖d1=.

14 ... ♖f4 (38)



15 g3

Keres considered the position to be equal based on the variation 15 ♖xg7 ♖g8 16 g3 (16 ♖c3 ♖d7-) 16 ... ♖xf2+ 17 ♖xf2 ♖xf2+ 18 ♖xf2 ♖xg7=. However, 15 g3 completely changes the situation, for when the g7-pawn falls Black cannot capture one of White's kingside pawns and has to settle for the d-pawn, leaving White with a clear pawn majority on the kingside.

15 ... ♖g4
 16 ♖xg4 ♖xg4
 17 ♖xg7 ♖g8?!

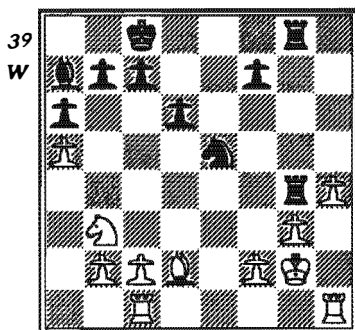
Black sacrifices a pawn in order to activate the rook, but this plan is ineffectual. Although 17 ... ♖h7 looks uncomfortable for Black it is essential, although White still enjoys the brighter prospects: 18 ♖d4 ♖f3 19 ♖g1 ♖xd4 (19 ... ♖xd5 20 ♖d3!±) 20 ♖xd4 ♖xd5 21 ♖h3! ♖c6 22 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 23 ♖d2 f6 24 ♖ae1+ ♖e7 25 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 26 ♖e1+ ♖f7?! (26 ... ♖f8 27 ♖d3 ♖e8 28 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 29 ♖d4

with a slight edge to White due to his superior pawn structure) 27 ♖g4 ♖e8 (27 ... ♖d8 28 ♖h5+ ♖f8 29 ♖e6+-) 28 ♖h5+ ♖f8 29 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 30 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 31 ♖e3 ♖e7 32 g4 ♖e6 33 ♖f4 b6 34 axb6 cxb6 35 c4 b5 36 cxb5 axb5 37 ♖e4 b4 38 ♖d4 f5 39 g5 1-0 Hertel - Bruckel, Corr 1988.

18 ♖xh6 ♖xd5
 19 ♖h3 ♖b4
 20 ♖c1 0-0-0
 21 ♖d2

Black enjoys an initiative, but it is only temporary and White quickly consolidates. Although his king still lies in the centre there is enough time to shuffle it to safety via f1-g2.

21 ... ♖c6
 22 ♖xg4+ ♖xg4
 23 ♖f1 ♖e5
 24 ♖g2 ♖dg8 (39)



25 ♖h3!

It is necessary to mobilize the kingside pawns. For this purpose the rook on h3 is ideally placed, guarding g3 and maintaining support for the h-pawn.

25 ... f5

50 *Classical Variation: 5 ♘b3*

26 f3 ♖c4
 27 h5 f4
 28 h6 ♙e3
 29 h7 ♖h8
 30 ♙xe3 fxe3
 31 f4 ♗g4
 32 ♜f3

It is not necessary to calculate the exact consequences of giving up the h-pawn for the e-pawn, since White's passed connected pawns have a clear road to promotion.

32 ... ♗f6
 33 ♜xe3 ♖xh7
 34 ♖xh7 ♗xh7
 35 ♜d3 d5
 36 ♗d2 ♖a4
 37 ♖h1

The game now more or less runs its course; White's rook chases the black knight to a passive position and then he is ready to advance his passed pawns to their queening squares.

37 ... ♗f6
 38 ♖h6 ♗e8
 39 ♖h7 ♗f6
 40 ♖f7 ♗h5
 41 b3

Now 41 ... ♖d4 is met by 42 c3 after which the rook must leave the fourth rank and White can play g4 in safety.

1-0

Although White invariably follows 4 ... ♙c5 5 ♘b3 ♙b6 with 6 a4 he does occasionally try to do without this move, although Black should be able

to achieve an equal game without too many difficulties, notwithstanding the result of the next game.

**Atkinson - Brandner
 Arnhem 1989**

1 e4 e5
 2 ♗f3 ♗c6
 3 d4 exd4
 4 ♗xd4 ♙c5
 5 ♘b3 ♙b6

Instead 5 ... ♙b4+ is worthy of attention, disrupting White's development. After 6 c3 ♙e7 White may play:

a) 7 g3 ♗f6 8 ♗g2 0-0 9 0-0 ♙e8 10 f4 d6 11 h3 ♙f8 12 ♗d1d2 g6 13 ♗d4 ♗g7 14 ♜h2± Grotkov - Tarasov, Agler 1969.

b) 7 ♗d4 ♙f6 8 g3 ♗e7 9 ♗g2 0-0 10 0-0 d6 11 ♗a3 ♙d7 12 h3 ♗xd4 13 cxd4 c5 (Radulov - Keres, Budapest 1970) 14 ♙e3 ♗c6 15 ♗c2=.

c) 7 ♙f4 d6 8 ♗d2 ♗f6 9 ♙e2 0-0 10 0-0 ♙e8 11 ♙e1 ♙f8 12 ♙f1 g6 13 ♜c2± Pfleger - O'Kelly, Montilla 1973.

d) 7 c4!? ♗f6 8 ♗c3 0-0 (8 ... ♙b4 9 ♙d3±) 9 ♙e2 ♙e8 10 f3 a5 (B. Ivanovic - Petrosian, USSR 1979) 11 0-0 a4 12 ♗d4 ♙c5 13 ♙e3±.

e) 7 f4 d6 8 ♙d3 and now:

e1) 8 ... ♙h4+!? 9 g3 ♙f6 10 ♙e3 h5 11 h3 g5 12 ♜d2 gxf4 13 gxf4 ♗e7 14 ♗a3 ♙h4+ 15 ♙f2 ♗g6 16 ♜d1 ♗-♗ Hübner - Spassky, Linares 1985.

e2) 8 ... ♗f6 9 ♜c2 0-0 10

♠d2 ♖e8 11 0-0 ♙f8 12 ♚f3±
Santo Roman - Kharitonov,
Royan 1988.

Instead of 6 c3, White can
also play 6 ♘d2 a5!? 7 a3 ♙e7 8
a4 ♚f6 9 ♚c3 0-0 10 ♙b5 d5 11
exd5 ♚b4 12 0-0 ♙g4 13 ♙e2
♙xe2 14 ♖xe2 ♚xc2 15 ♖ad1
♚b4 16 ♖b5 ♚bxd5 17 ♚xd5
½-½ Smirin - Khalifman, USSR
1990.

Less good is the timid 5 ...
♙e7?! 6 g3 ♚f6 7 ♙g2 0-0 8 0-0
♖e8 9 h3 a5 10 a4± Bastrikov -
Bannik, USSR 1952.

6 ♚c3

Naturally, even after this
move White can still seek to
transpose into other lines by an
early a4, but usually this move
indicates a desire to avoid the
well-trodden main lines. Not so
good is 6 c4?! d6 7 ♚c3 ♖h4! 8
g3 ♖f6 9 c5 dxc5 10 ♙e3 ♚ge7 11
♚xc5 0-0 12 ♙g2 ♚e5± Estrin -
Furman, USSR 1950.

6 ... ♚ge7 (40)

As we have seen earlier in
this chapter (with a4 and ... a6
already played), Black's most
reliable means of development
is this knight move, avoiding
the pin which might follow an
early ... ♚f6. The alternatives
are:

a) 6 ... ♚f6 7 ♙f4 (7 ♙g5 d6 8
♖d2 h6 9 ♙e3 0-0 10 0-0-0 ♖e7
11 f3 ♙xe3 12 ♖xe3± Radulov -
Matanovic, Helsinki 1972) 7 ...
d6 8 ♖d2 and now:

a1) 8 ... ♙e6 and now:

a11) 9 0-0-0 h6?! 10 ♙b5 ♚h5

11 h4 ♖f6 12 ♙e3 ♙xe3 13 ♖xe3
0-0 14 g3 ♖g6 15 g4! and White
is better as the g-pawn cannot
be taken due to ♖dgl, Seeliger -
Kapic, Corr 1984.

a12) 9 ♙b5 a6 10 ♙xc6+ bxc6
11 0-0 0-0 12 ♖ad1 ♙c4 13 ♖fe1
♚g4 14 ♚d4 ♖f6 15 ♙g3 ♚e5 16
b3 ♖fe8 17 ♚a4!± Seeliger -
Florian, Corr 1984.

a2) 8 ... ♚g4 9 ♙g3 ♙e6 10
♚d5 ♙xd5 11 exd5 ♖e7+ 12 ♙e2
♚ce5 13 0-0-0 ♚xf2 14 ♙b5+ c6
15 dxc6 bxc6 16 ♙xe5 0-0 17
♙xd6+- Doncevic - Besada,
Geneva 1985.

a3) 8 ... ♖e7 9 0-0-0 h6 10
♚d5 ♚xd5 11 exd5 ♚e5 12 ♙b5+
♖f8 13 ♖he1 ♖f6 14 ♙e3 ♙g4 15
f3 ♙d7 16 f4 ♙xb5 17 fxe5 dxe5
18 ♖b4+ 1-0 Doncevic - Lab-
bude, Geneva 1985.

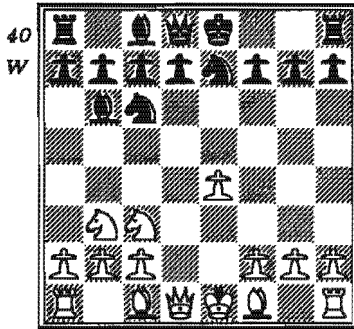
a4) 8 ... 0-0 9 f3 ♚e5 10
0-0-0 ♚g6?! (10 ... ♖e8!?) 11 ♙g3
♖e8 12 h4! h5 13 ♖b1 ♙d7 14
♖g5!? ♚f8 15 ♙c4 ♙e6 (Don-
cevic - Kavalek, Bundesliga
1985/86) 16 ♙e2 ♚8h7 17 ♖f4
♚d7 18 ♚d5±.

b) 6 ... d6 7 ♙e2 ♙e6 8 0-0
♚f6 9 ♙g5 h6 10 ♙h4 g5 11 ♙g3
d5 12 exd5 ♚xd5 13 ♚e4 ♚f4 14
♙xf4 gxf4 15 ♖e1 ♚d4 16 ♙c4!
f3 17 ♚xd4 ♖xd4 18 ♙xe6 fxe6
19 ♖xf3 0-0-0 20 a4 ♖hf8 21
♖h3 ♖f5 22 ♖xh6 ♖e5 23 c3
♖d3 24 ♖h7 1-0 Castro - Shap-
iro, St. Martin 1991.

c) 6 ... ♖f6 7 ♖e2 ♚ge7 8
♙e3!? (8 ♚d5 ♚xd5 9 exd5+
♚e7 10 h4?! [White lacks the
potential lateral development

52 Classical Variation: 5 ♘b3

of his queen's rook here] 10 ... h6 11 c4 ♗g6 12 ♕d2 ♗g4= Roth - Matanovic, Vienna 1986) 8 ... ♖d4 9 ♗d2 ♘xb3 10 axb3 ♕xe3 11 ♗xe3 ♘c6 12 ♘d5 ♗xb2 13 ♖d1 0-0 14 ♕d3 ♘d4 15 0-0 ♘e6 16 e5 ♖h8 17 ♕xh7 1-0 Chibur-danidze - Malaniuk, Kusadasi 1990.



7 ♕e2 d6
8 0-0 0-0
9 ♕g5

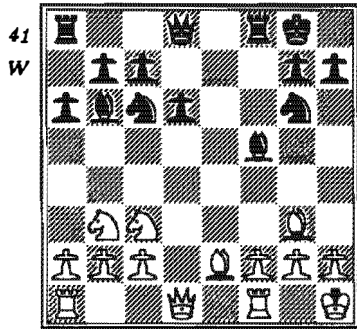
It is necessary to activate the bishop in order to diminish the effect of ... f5. The careless 9 ♘a4?! allows Black to open the f-file and rapidly marshal his forces towards the kingside: 9 ... f5 10 ♘xb6 axb6 11 exf5 ♘xf5 12 ♖f3 ♗f6 13 c3 ♕e6 14 ♕e4 ♗f7 15 ♕c2 ♕c4 16 ♖e1 ♘h4 17 ♕e3 ♕d5 18 ♗b1 ♘xg2! 19 ♕xh7+ ♖h8 20 ♕g6 ♗f3 21 ♘d2 ♗g4 22 f3 ♘f4+!! 0-1 Mathe - Yakovich, Kecskemet 1991.

9 ... f6
10 ♕h4 ♘g6
11 ♕g3 a6

The bishop is given an escape square in case of ♘a4.

12 ♖h1 f5

13 exf5 ♕xf5 (4)



14 ♘d5 ♕a7

A roughly equal position has arisen in which White's greater freedom of movement is counterbalanced by Black's play on the f-file. White now connects his rooks as quickly as possible but he lacks any real weaknesses to attack unless Black mishandles things.

15 ♗d2 ♖h8
16 ♖ae1 ♗d7
17 ♕h5 ♘ce5?!

A careless move which cedes White a lasting initiative. Black aims to block the e-file but this simply encourages the white f-pawn to advance. Although the pawn on f4 blocks the white bishop on g3, this is a secondary factor relative to his control over the e-file. Much more satisfactory was the solid 17 ... ♖ae8.

18 f4! ♘c6

An embarrassing move to have to make, but Black cannot afford to lose control of the e7-square, e.g. 18 ... ♘g4 19 ♕xg6 ♕xg6 20 ♖e7 ♗d8 21 ♖xc7

♞e3 22 ♜c3! winning.

- 19 ♖e2 ♞g7
 20 ♞xe7 ♞xe7
 21 ♖fe1 ♞g8
 22 ♞d4

A remarkable transformation has occurred since the last diagram. White has seized control of the e-file and now brings his offside knight into the battle for the e6-square.

22 ... ♞g4?!

Under pressure, Black prefers to trade bishops rather than allow it to be exchanged for the knight.

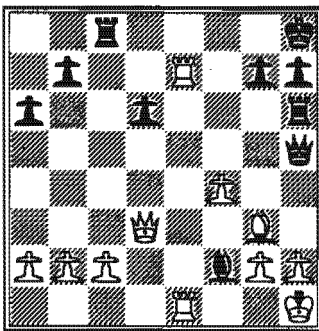
- 23 ♞xg4 ♜xg4
 24 ♞e6 ♖f6

It is pointless to try and preserve the c-pawn: 24 ... ♖f7 25 ♞g5 ♖ff8 26 ♜d5 ♜h5 27 ♜xb7+-.

- 25 ♞xc7 ♖c8
 26 ♞d5 ♖h6
 27 ♜d3

White easily defends against the threat of 27 ... fxg3.

- 27 ... ♜h5
 28 ♞e7 ♞xe7
 29 ♖xe7 ♞f2 (42)



30 ♜c3!

In a tense situation, White finds a surprising way of neutralising Black's activity, using the weakness of his opponent's back rank to create mating threats.

- 30 ... ♖g8
 31 ♖1e2 ♞xg3
 32 ♜xg3 ♜b5
 33 c3 ♖f6
 34 ♜e3 ♜d5
 35 a3 g5
 36 ♜e4

With an extra pawn and mobile rooks, White is happy to settle for the ending.

- 36 ... ♜xe4
 37 ♖7xe4 gxf4
 38 ♖f2 ♖gf8
 39 ♖f3 ♖8f7
 40 ♜g1 ♜g7
 41 ♜f2 ♖f5
 42 ♖d4 ♖7f6
 43 ♖fd3

The weakness of Black's pawn formation finally tells.

1-0

Conclusion

The main lines of the 5 ♘b3 line are far from harmless for Black unless he is well prepared against them. Black's best course is to follow the game B. Ivanovic - Tal as both 6 ... a5 and 6 ... ♜f6 are risky ways of meeting 6 a4. The variation 6 ♞c3 is much less dangerous as Black has many more options than in the 6 a4 variations.

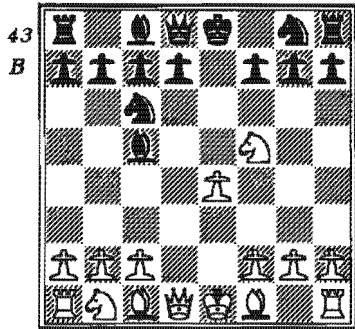
5 Classical Variation: 5 ♖f5

This is practically the Dutch Grandmaster Jan Timman's patent variation as he is one of the few top-class players who plays it regularly, with excellent practical results. Black is forced to disrupt his formation in defending against the threat to the g7-pawn, after which White relocates his knight to e3 in order to occupy the important d5-square. Of course, these knight manoeuvres do take several moves to carry out and Black may be able to use this time to create counterplay.

Timman - Smyslov Bugojno 1984

- | | | |
|---|----------|------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♗f3 | ♗c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♗xd4 | ♙c5 |
| 5 | ♗f5 (43) | |
| 5 | ... | g6 |

After this move the knight is forced to retreat immediately and Black can get on with the job of developing his pieces. However, the dark squares around the black king are now permanently weak as the



bishop is not able to take up its natural outpost on g7. If White can infiltrate these squares then Black's position will quickly fall apart. It is perhaps curious that no one has yet dared to test Timman with an old analysis given by Steinitz in *Modern Chess Instructor* which runs 5 ... d5 6 ♗xg7+ ♖f8 7 ♗h5 ♗h4 8 ♗g3 ♗f6 9 ♙e2 ♗e5 10 h3 ♗g8 with an initiative for Black. Practical examples of this variation tend to be in Black's favour: 5 ... d5 6 ♗xg7+ (6 exd5? ♗xf5 7 dxc6 ♗xf2+!-+) 6 ... ♖f8 7 ♗h5 (7 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 8 exd5 ♗b4-+; 7 exd5 ♗xg7 8 dxc6 ♗xf2+; 7 ♗f5 ♗xf5 8 exf5 ♗h4) 7 ... ♗h4 8 ♗g3 ♗f6 and now:

- a) 9 ♗d2? ♗g4 10 ♗xd5

♠xf2+ 11 ♣e2 ♠f6!-+ Ivanovic - Pinter, Plovdiv 1979.

b) 9 ♠e2 ♠e5 10 ♠e3 ♠xe3 11 fxe3 ♠g8 12 ♠f1 ♠xh2 13 ♠xf6 ♠xg3+ 14 ♣d2 ♠g4 15 ♠xg4 ♠xg4 0-1 Prudhomme - Jacobs, Cappelletti la Grande 1989.

On this evidence it is probably best to leave the g-pawn alone: 6 ♠c3! ♠xf5 (6 ... dxe4?! 7 ♠xg7+ ♣f8 8 ♠xd8+ ♠xd8 9 ♠xe4±) 7 exf5 d4 8 ♠e4 with an unclear position.

Another major alternative for Black is 5 ... d6 when White probably does best to decline the offer of the pawn:

a) 6 ♠xg7+ ♣f8 7 ♠h5 (7 ♠f5 ♠xf5 8 exf5 ♠h4) 7 ... ♠h4 8 ♠g3 ♠f6 (8 ... ♠f6?! 9 ♠d2 h5 10 ♠f4 h4 11 ♠e2 h3 12 ♠bc3 ♠b4 13 ♣d1 ♠xf2) Yakovich - Barle, Berne 1992) 9 ♠e2 ♠e5 and now:

a1) 10 f3? and now:

a1) 10 ... ♠eg4? 11 fxc4 ♠xe4 12 ♠d5! f5 13 ♠f1 ♠f6 14 ♠xf5± Timman - Handoko, Zagreb 1985.

a2) 10 ... ♠g8 11 ♣d2 (11 ♠d2 ♠xg3 12 ♠h6+ ♠xh6 13 ♠xh6+ ♠g7; 11 ♣f1? ♠xg3 12 ♠e1 ♠h5 13 ♠c3 ♠h3!-+) 11 ... d5 12 ♠c3 ♠e6 intending ... ♠d8.

a3) 10 ... ♠h5! 11 ♣d2 (11 ♠d2 h6!) 11 ... ♠xg3 12 hxg3 ♠xg3.

a2) 10 ♠d2 ♠xf2+.

a3) 10 b4 ♠xb4+ 11 c3 ♠c5 12 ♠a3 ♠xe4 13 ♠xc5 ♠xc5 Timman - Borm, Netherlands 1985.

a4) 10 ♠c3 ♠fg4 11 ♠xg4 ♠xg4 12 ♠f1 ♠g8 13 ♠a4 ♠xh2 14 ♠xc5 ♠xf1 15 ♠xf1 ♠xg3 16 fxc3 ♠h1+ 17 ♣f2 ♠xd1 18 ♠h6+ ♣e7 19 ♠xd1 dxc5 20 ♠f4 ♠g4 ½-½ Timman - Karpov, Brussels (exhibition game) 1988.

b) 6 ♠e3 and now:

b1) 6 ... ♠f6 7 ♠c3 ♠e6 (7 ... ♠ge7 8 ♠d3 transposes to the main game) 8 ♠e2 (8 ♠d3!?) 8 ... ♠ge7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♣h1= Schulz - Herbrechtsmeir, Bundesliga 1984/85.

b2) 6 ... ♠f6 7 ♠c3 0-0 8 ♠d3 ♠e5 9 0-0 c6 10 ♠a4 ♠b4 11 f4 ♠xd3 12 cxd3 b5?! (12 ... d5! 13 a3! ♠e7 14 e5 ♠e8) 13 ♠c3 ♠e8 14 ♠f3 ♠c5 15 ♣h1± Wu Xibin - Thorsteins, China 1985.

The final alternative, 5 ... ♠f6, is discussed in the next illustrative game.

6 ♠e3 ♠f6

7 ♠c3 0-0

Black chooses to delay moving the d-pawn in order to keep his options open. In Ivanovic - Plachetka, Naleczow 1979, Black played the immediate 7 ... d6 without success: 8 ♠d3 ♠e6 9 0-0 ♠e5 10 ♠e2 ♠d7 11 ♣h1 ♠eg4 12 ♠ed5 c6 13 b4+-.

8 ♠d3 ♠e8

9 0-0

Although White has not yet revealed his middlegame intentions, he can clearly hope to develop an attack with ♠ed5, ♣h1 and f4 as Black has no way of freeing his game.

9 ... ♘e5

It is surprising to find that this identical position arose in a master game soon after the opening was first introduced. On that occasion Black chose a weaker path, and White's attack developed automatically: 9 ... ♘d4?! 10 ♘e5 ♘xd5 11 ♘xd5 d6 12 c3 ♘g7 13 f4 ♘e7 14 f5! gxf5 15 ♘g5 fxe4 16 ♘xe4 ♗d7 17 ♘xh7+ ♖xh7 18 ♗h5+ ♖g8 19 ♗xf7+ ♖h8 20 ♘f6 1-0 Wayte - Ranken, Edinburgh 1877.

10 ♗h1 d6

Exchanging the bishop with 10 ... ♘xd3 would only strengthen White's centre. The game Savon - Ivkov, Wijk aan Zee 1972, continued 11 cxd3 ♘f8 12 f4 d6 13 ♗f3 and White eventually pushed forward the kingside pawns with an advantage.

11 ♘e2 ♘c6?!

In view of the impending f4, Black chooses to relocate the knight immediately, but chooses the wrong square. A better course of action is 11 ... ♘ed7! 12 f3 a6 13 a3 ♘f8 14 b4 ♘a7 15 ♘c4 c6 16 ♗d3 ♘e6 17 ♘xe6 ♘xe6 with equal chances, Handoka - Smejkal, Zagreb 1985.

12 f3

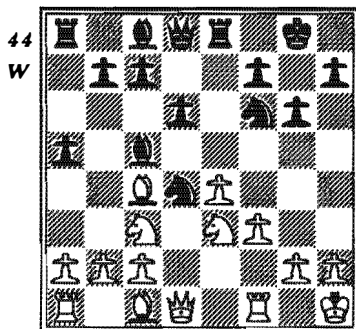
The strongpoint at e4 is reinforced in order to free the white pieces which are defending it.

12 ... ♘d4

In Timman - Gligoric, Bug-

ojno 1984, Black played more cautiously: 12 ... a6 13 ♘d2 ♘d4 14 ♘c4 c6 15 f4 ♘b5 ½-½.

13 ♘c4 a5? (44)



This is too casual; Black should take steps to defend the f7-square with 13 ... ♘e6, when the position is roughly equal.

14 ♘g4!

A marvellous ——— which offers Black the chance to split the white pawns in order to open access to the f-file. After 14 ... ♘xg4 the weakness of the kingside dark squares becomes apparent: 15 fxf4 ♘e6 (15 ... ♘e6 16 ♗f3!) 16 ♘d5 ♖g7 17 ♗d2 with excellent attacking chances.

14 ... ♘e6

15 ♘g5 ♘xg4

Black has no choice but to seek salvation in giving up the queen for an assortment of pieces. However, Timman conducts the technical phase of the game with real efficiency.

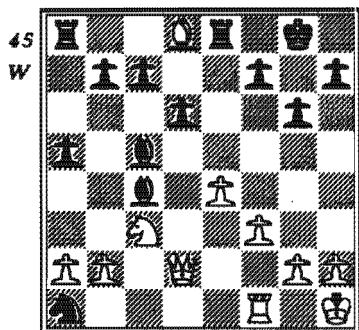
16 ♘xd8 ♘e3

If 16 ... ♘xc4 17 fxf4 ♘xf1 18 ♘f6+-.

17 ♗c1 ♘xc4

18 ♖xe3 ♘xc2
19 ♖d2 ♘xa1 (45)

28 axb4 axb4
29 ♖g2 bxa4
30 ♖d4 ♖xb3



20 ♖f6!

Now that White menaces 21 ♖h6 Black is forced into inferior simplifications. This is much stronger than the routine 20 ♖xa1 ♖axd8 when the black rooks retain their coordination.

20 ... ♖e6
21 ♖xa1 ♖xf6
22 b3 ♖e6
23 ♘a4! ♖a3

Black cannot improve on the game continuation by 23 ... ♖b4 as 24 ♖b2 ♖f4 25 a3 would leave the bishop and rook awkwardly placed.

24 ♖c3 ♖f4

It is wrong to allow the rook to be pinned: 24 ... ♖g7? 25 g4 h6 26 h4 g5 27 f4!+-.

25 g3 ♖b4
26 ♖d3 ♖f6
27 a3 b5

An audacious way of continuing the situation. This is clearly a better course than 27 ... ♖c5 28 ♘xc5 dxc5 29 ♖c3 ♖g7 30 g4+- with similar play to the previous note.

Black gives up the rook in a frantic attempt to utilize the passed queenside pawns. White has no more problems after 30 ... ♖g7 31 ♖xa4 ♖xa4 32 bxa4 c5 33 ♖a1 c4 34 ♖d4 when the white a-pawn decides the game.

31 ♖xf6 a3
32 ♖d4 c5
33 ♖xd6 ♖c8
34 ♖d2 ♖e6
35 f4 h6
36 g4 ♖xg4
37 f5!

In clinical fashion, White locks the bishop out of the game.

37 ... ♖e8
38 ♖xh6 gxf5
39 h3 1-0

Another way of dealing with the threat to the g-pawn created by White's fifth move is the response 5 ... ♖f6, though Timman's handling of the white pieces in the following games shows a model treatment of this variation.

Timman - Hübner
Sarajevo (3) 1991

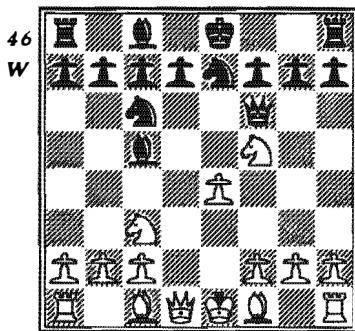
1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 d4 exd4
4 ♘xd4 ♖c5
5 ♘f5 ♖f6

58 Classical Variation: 5 $\text{c}3$ $\text{f}5$

This move is also considered satisfactory for Black as it defends the g-pawn and activates the queen.

6 $\text{c}3$ $\text{g}e7$ (46)

In Salazar - Benko, Buenos Aires 1991, Black tried a bizarre plan: 6 ... $\text{c}e7?$? 7 $\text{e}3$ $\text{c}6$ 8 $\text{Qd}3$ $\text{d}5$ 9 $\text{exd}5$ $\text{Qb}4$ 10 O-O $\text{Qxc}3$ 11 $\text{bxc}3$ $\text{Qd}7$ 12 $\text{Bb}1$ $\text{cxd}5$ 13 $\text{Bxb}7$ $\text{c}6$ 14 $\text{Bb}3$ $\text{f}6$ 15 $\text{Qa}3$ $\text{c}8$ 16 $\text{Re}1$ $\text{Qd}8$ 17 $\text{c}4$ $\text{Re}8$ 18 $\text{cxd}5$ $\text{f}xd5$ 19 $\text{Qb}5$ $\text{b}7$ 20 $\text{Qxd}7$ 1-0.



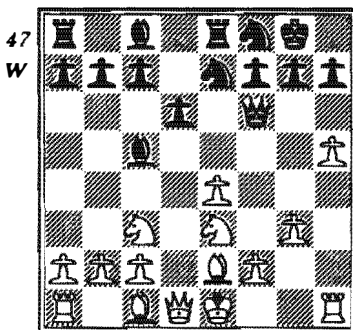
7 $\text{e}3$ O-O
8 $\text{Qd}3$

Timman opts for the same set up as used in his game against Smyslov in the previous illustrative game. Prior to this game, practical experience had been largely confined to the continuation 8 $\text{g}3$ $\text{e}5$ 9 $\text{f}4$ $\text{Sg}6$ 10 $\text{Q}2$ $\text{c}6$ 11 O-O $\text{d}5$ 12 $\text{gh}!$ $\text{Qxe}3$ 13 $\text{Qxe}3$ $\text{dxe}4$ 14 $\text{c}!$ $\text{f}5$ 15 $\text{fxe}4$ $\text{Qxe}4?$! (15 ... $\text{b}e6?$? =) 16 $\text{Qxe}4$ $\text{Re}8$ 17 $\text{Re}1$ $\text{b}6$ 18 $\text{c}3$ $\text{f}5$ 19 $\text{f}2$ when White is much better due to his powerful pair of bishops, Ljubojevic - Karpov, Montreal 1979.

8 ... $\text{e}5$
9 $\text{Qe}2$ $\text{Sg}6$
10 $\text{g}3$

The knight is prevented from invading at f4 and White prepares to drive it back with h4-h5.

10 ... $\text{d}6$
11 $\text{h}4$ $\text{Re}8$
12 $\text{h}5$ $\text{f}8$ (47)



13 $\text{h}4!$

An astounding idea; White gives up the right to castle kingside in order to bring his rook into a position where it can harass the black queen. Suddenly White's space advantage takes on menacing proportions.

13 ... $\text{c}6?$!

A more flexible approach is 13 ... $\text{a}6$ in order to leave an escape square on a7 for the bishop. Less good is 13 ... $\text{c}6?$! 14 $\text{Qb}5$ $\text{a}6$ 15 $\text{Qa}4$ $\text{Qe}6$ 16 $\text{Bf}4$ $\text{Qd}8$ 17 $\text{f}5$ $\text{Qxf}5$ 18 $\text{Bxf}5$ $\text{Re}5$ 19 $\text{Qg}5$ $\text{b}e8$ 20 $\text{Bf}1$ $\text{Bxf}5$ 21 $\text{exf}5$ $\text{b}e5$ 22 $\text{b}g4$ $\text{Re}8$ 23 $\text{Bd}1$ $\text{b}5$ 24 $\text{Qf}4$ $\text{b}f6$ 25 $\text{f}d5$ $\text{b}xb2$ 26 $\text{f}6$ $\text{g}6$ 27 $\text{h}xg6$ $\text{h}xg6$ 28 $\text{Qb}3$ $\text{Re}6$ 29 $\text{b}h4$ $\text{f}d7$ 30 $\text{e}7+$ 1-0 Hernan-

dez-Guerrero - A. Lopez, Mexico 1992.

14 ♖a4 ♜d4

Timman himself points out that preserving the important bishop by 14 ... ♖b4+ is not sufficient to solve Black's problems: 15 c3 (15 ♖d2!?) 15 ... ♖a5 16 ♜f4 (16 b4 ♖c7 with an unclear position) 16 ... ♜e6 (16 ... ♜h6 17 ♖c4+-) 17 ♖g4±.

15 ♖xc5 ♜xc5?

It was essential to recapture with 15 ... dxc5 although 16 ♖c4 intending ♖e3 is still better for White.

16 ♖c4! ♜d8

The weakness of the d-pawn caused by Black's thirteenth move becomes apparent. If 16 ... d5 then White pursues the queen: 17 ♖e3 ♜b5 18 a4 ♜a6 19 ♖d6 ♜a5+ 20 ♖d2+-.

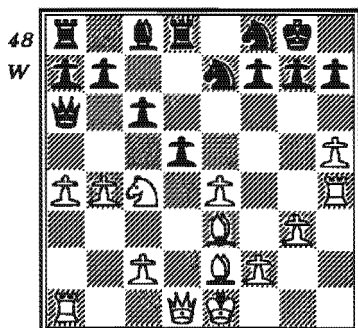
17 ♖e3 ♜b5

18 a4 ♜a6

19 b4

The last outlet for the beleaguered queen is closed down. Now White threatens both 20 ♖b6 and 20 ♖xd6.

19 ... d5 (48)



20 ♖b6

Timman nets the queen for two pieces but there was a quicker way to win: 20 ♖c5! ♜d7 (20 ... ♜e8 21 ♖d6+-) 21 ♖e5+-.

20 ... ♜xb6

21 ♖xb6 axb6

22 exd5 ♖f5

23 ♜f4 ♜xd5

24 ♖d3

White now has the simple plan of exchanging as many pieces as possible in order to maximise the power of his queen.

24 ... g6

25 hxg6 hxg6

26 ♜e4 ♖e6

27 ♜d2 ♖d4

28 ♜c3 c5

It is imperative for Black to block the a1-h8 diagonal; otherwise the opposing rooks will double on the h-file with excellent mating chances.

29 bxc5 bxc5

30 ♖c4 ♜h5

31 ♖xe6 ♖fxe6

32 ♜h4 ♜f5

Black's best practical chance is to keep the pieces on and create tricks based on the exposed white king.

33 ♖f1 ♜f3

34 ♜b2 ♜e8

35 ♜e1 ♜e7

36 a5 ♜d7

37 ♖g2 ♜f5

38 ♜eh1 ♖g5

39 a6

The pawn is taboo due to 39

60 *Classical Variation: 5 ♘f5*

... bxa6 40 ♖b8+ ♜g7 41 ♖h8
mate, so it becomes a passed
pawn and finishes the game.

40 c3 ♘df3
41 ♖f4 1-0

Conclusion

The 5 ♘f5 variation indicates

that White wants a fight right
out of the opening and is
therefore ideally suited to
players such as Timman who
have a confrontational style.
Black's most promising course
of action is 5 ... d6 which leads
to very unclear play. This is an
ideal choice for investigation.

6 Classical Variation: 5 ♖xc6

This solid variation has always enjoyed a rather dour reputation although recently the Russian Grandmaster Smagin has chosen it on a regular basis. White hopes to exploit the damage to Black's pawn structure after ... bxc6, but it is doubtful whether he really has any advantage after the intermediate move 5 ... ♗f6!.

Smagin - Gligoric Yugoslavia 1991

1	e4	e5
2	♖f3	♗c6
3	d4	exd4
4	♗xd4	♖c5
5	♗xc6	

White releases the tension, steering the game away from the heavily analysed main lines.

5 ... ♗f6!

The threat of mate in one allows Black to develop with ease.

6 ♗d2

This is White's most combative choice here; although the queen's bishop is blocked White can rapidly activate his other forces and can harass the

enemy queen. Other defences against the mate allow Black an easy game:

a) 6 ♗f3 bxc6 7 ♖c4 ♗xf3 8 gxf3 d6=.

b) 6 ♗e2 bxc6 7 ♗c3 a5 8 ♖e3 ♖a6 9 ♗d2 ♖xe3 10 ♗xe3 ♖xf1 11 ♖xf1 ♗e7= Barczay - Lengyel, Kecskemet 1968.

c) 6 f4 and now:

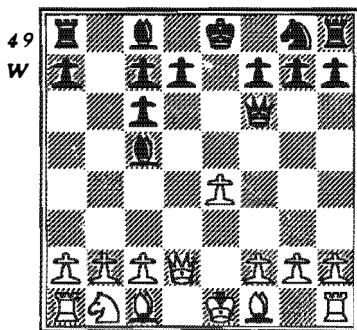
c1) 6 ... ♗xc6?! 7 ♗c3 ♗f6 8 ♖b5 ♗e6 9 ♗e2 0-0 10 e5 ♗d5 11 ♗e4 ♖e7 12 0-0+ Larsen - Brinck-Claussen, Copenhagen 1979.

c2) 6 ... dxc6 7 ♗c3 and now:

c21) 7 ... h5 8 ♗d3?! (8 f5!?) 8 ... ♖g4 9 h3 ♖d8 10 e5 ♗h4+! 11 g3 ♗e7 12 ♗e4 ♗f6 13 ♗g2 ♖f5 14 ♗e2 ♗d5 15 ♗xd5 cxd5 16 ♖g2 0-0 17 g4 ♗h4+ 18 ♖d1 ♖e4! 19 ♖d2 ♗g3 20 ♖xe4 dxe4 21 ♖c1 ♖xd2+= Hekuriani - Sturua, USSR 1982.

c22) 7 ... ♗h6! 8 ♗f3 ♗h4+ 9 g3 ♖g4 10 ♗g2 ♗h5 11 ♖e2 0-0-0 12 h3 ♖xe2 13 ♗xe2 ♗g6 14 g4 ♖he8 15 ♖d2 ♗f5! 16 0-0-0 (16 gxf5 ♗g3+ 17 ♖f1 ♖d2!+=; 17 ♖d1 ♖e3+=) 16 ... ♗g3+= Barczay - Romanishin, Dortmund 1982.

6 ... bxc6 (49)



An interesting recapture, which is motivated by a desire to play a later ... d5 and contest the centre. Of the two alternatives, 6 ... dxc6 is a solid choice whilst Smagin's 9 b4 may cast some doubt on the viability of the queen recapture:

a) 6 ... dxc6 and now:

a1) 7 ♖d3 ♖e6 8 ♖c3 0-0-0 9 ♖e2 ♖d4 10 ♖d2 ♖e7 11 f4 ♖he8 12 e5 ♖h4+ 13 g3 ♖h3 14 0-0-0 f6 15 exf6 gxf6 16 ♖de1 ♖f7 17 ♖f1 ♖h5 18 f5 ♖e5 ½-½ Smagin - Mainka, Prague 1992.

a2) 7 ♖f4!? ♖e6 8 ♖c3 ♖e7 9 ♖e3 0-0-0 10 ♖e2 ♖f6 11 0-0 ♖he8 12 ♖g3 ♖xe3 13 ♖xe3 ♖b8 14 a3?! (14 ♖ad1 =) 14 ... ♖c8 15 ♖d3 ♖g4 16 ♖g3 (Chaplin - Lane, Fourmies 1992) 16 ... g5, intending to station the knight on e5 ♖.

b) 6 ... ♖xc6 7 ♖d3 ♖f6 8 0-0 0-0 9 b4! (9 ♖f4 b6 = Wade - J. Littlewood, Rhyl 1969) 9 ... ♖d4 10 c3 ♖b6 11 c4! ♖d4 12 ♖c3 a5 (12 ... ♖xc3? 13 ♖xc3 ♖xe4 14 ♖c2) 13 ♖b2 ♖e8 (13 ... axb4 14 ♖d5 ♖c5 15 e5! ♖xb2 16 ♖xf6+ ♖h8 17 ♖xb2 gxf6 18 ♖fe1±) 14

b5 ♖d6 15 ♖ad1 ♖e5 16 h3 c5 17 ♖a4 ♖xb2 (Smagin - Hjartarson, Bundesliga 1991) 18 ♖xb2 intending f4 gives White the superior chances due to his space advantage.

7 ♖d3 ♖e7
8 0-0 0-0
9 ♖c3

The quiet 9 ♖h1 to facilitate a swift f4 represents an important alternative: 9 ... d5 10 ♖c3 ♖d4 11 exd5 cxd5 12 ♖b5 ♖e5 13 f4 ♖d6 14 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 15 f5 f6 16 ♖f4 ♖xf4 17 ♖xf4 (17 ♖xf4 ♖c6 18 ♖e3= Iv. Markovic - Si. Popov, Yugoslavia 1991) 17 ... ♖xf5 18 ♖xc7 ♖xd3 19 cxd3±.

9 ... ♖g6

More logical is 9 ... d5, when 10 ♖h1 transposes to the previous note.

10 ♖h1 a5?!

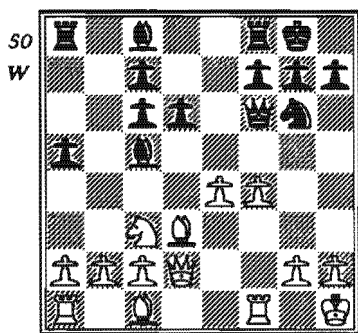
It was not essential to provide a retreat square for the bishop on a7 against ♖a4. In order to meet White's e5-breakthrough Black should play 10 ... d6 (10 ... ♖e5 11 ♖e2 with the idea of f4±) 11 f4 ♖b6 when White has slightly the better chances.

11 f4 d6 (50)
12 e5!

White plays a well-known trick in such positions based on the knight occupying e4.

12 ... ♖h4

After 12 ... dxe5 Black's game would swiftly fall apart: 13 ♖e4 ♖e7 14 f5 ♖f4 15 f6 gxf6 16 g3 ♖d5 (16 ... ♖h5 17 ♖h6 ♖g4 18



♗g5+-) 17 c4+-.

13 ♖e4 ♚b6

14 exd6 ♚f5

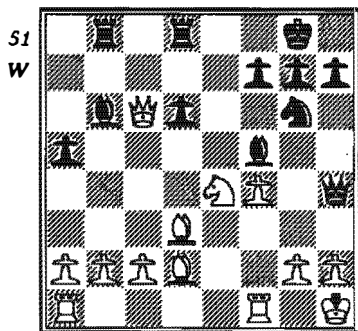
15 ♖c3

White could also call Black's bluff: 15 dxc7 ♚xc7 16 ♖f2! which leaves Black struggling to find compensation for the pawn.

15 ... cxd6

16 ♖xc6 ♜ab8

17 ♚d2 ♜fd8 (S)



18 ♚e1!

White has adjusted well to

the changed circumstances and continues in an energetic manner. More casual moves would allow Black to generate some counterplay: 18 ♚c3 ♗e7 19 ♖a4 (19 ♖c4? d5) 19 ... d5 20 ♗g3 ♚xd3 21 cxd3 d4 22 ♚d2 (22 ♚xa5? ♜a8) 22 ... ♗d5 intending to invade on e3.

18 ... ♖e7

19 ♚c3 ♗h4

Otherwise 20 ♗f6+ gxf6 21 ♚xf5 wrecks the kingside.

20 ♜ae1 ♖d7

21 ♖d5 ♖e6

Instead 21 ... ♚e6 would meet with a hostile response: 22 ♖h5 ♗f5 23 ♗f6+ gxf6 24 ♚xf6 ♚d4 25 ♖g5+ ♜f8 26 ♚xf5 ♚xf6 27 ♖xf6 ♚xf5 28 ♖h8 mate.

22 ♗f6+! gxf6

23 ♜xe6 fxe6

Black's game is hopeless.

24 ♖c6 ♜f7

25 ♜e1 ♚xd3

26 cxd3 f5

27 d4! 1-0

Conclusion

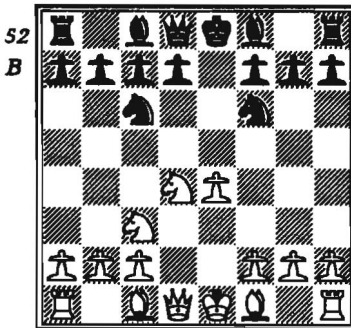
Although 5 ♖xc6 has the advantage of avoiding the theory of 5 ♚e3 or 5 ♗b3 it is not really testing enough. Black should be able to reach equality after 5 ... ♖f6 6 ♖d2 dxc6.

7 Scotch Four Knights

The Scotch Four Knights is a positional approach by which White postpones the confrontation until the middlegame. From White's point of view, the main line is quite easy to follow as his plans will be similar regardless of Black's response. Black should be able to achieve equality but if he plays too passively his position can deteriorate in an almost imperceptible fashion.

Salgado Allaria - Nunez Corr 1986-88

- | | | |
|---|----------|------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♟f3 | ♞c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♞xd4 | ♟f6 |
| 5 | ♞c3 (52) | |



This is the starting point of the Scotch Four Knights.

5 ... ♞b4

Black's alternatives do not really promise anything more than surprise value:

a) 5 ... ♞c5 6 ♞a3 ♞b6 and now:

a1) 7 ♞e2 d6 and:

a11) 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♞xc6 bxc6 10 ♞g5 ♜e7 11 ♜h1 h6 12 ♞h4 g5? 13 ♞g3 ♞xe4 14 ♞xe4 ♜xe4 15 f4 ♜d4 16 ♞d3 f5 17 fxg5 hxg5 18 ♜h5 ♜f6 19 ♞e1! ♞d4 20 ♞d2 ♞xb2 21 ♜ae1 ♞e5 22 ♜xe5!? dxe5 23 ♞xg5 ♜f7 24 ♜h6 ♞e6? (24 ... ♜e6!) 25 ♜f3 f4 26 ♞f6! 1-0 Klován - Razuvaev, USSR 1974.

a12) 8 ♜d2 ♞g4 (8 ... 0-0 9 0-0-0 ♜e8 10 f3 ♞d7 11 g4±) 9 ♞xg4 ♞xg4 10 h3 ♞d7 11 0-0-0 0-0 12 ♜he1±.

a2) 7 ♞xc6 bxc6 8 e5 ♞xe3 9 exf6 ♞h6 10 ♜e2+ ♜f8 11 fxg7+ ♞xg7 12 0-0-0 ♜g5+? Bikhovskiy - Lilienthal, Moscow 1958.

b) After 5 ... ♞xe4?! 6 ♞xe4 ♜e7 play might continue:

b1) 7 ♞e2? ♜xe4 8 ♞b5 ♞b4+ 9 c3 ♞a5 10 0-0 0-0? Obuchowsky - Matsukewitsch, USSR 1976.

b2) 7 f3 d5 and now:

b21) 8 Qf4? dxe4 9 Qb5
exf3+ 10 Qf2 Qe5-+.

b22) 8 Qxc6 bxc6 9 Qxe2 dxe4
10 Qxe4 Qxe4+ 11 fxe4 Qd6 12
Qc4 Qe7-.

b23) 8 Qb5 Qd7 9 Qxc6 bxc6
10 0-0 dxe4 and now:

b231) 11 Ke1 0-0-0 12 Qxe4
Qf6 13 Qf1 (Handoko - Hecht,
Thessaloniki ♀ 1984) 13 ... Qc5
offers equal chances.

b232) 11 fxe4! g6 (1f ... 0-0-0
12 Qd3!±) 12 Qe3 Qg7 13 Qb3!
0-0? 14 Qc5+-.

6 Qxc6

Not to be trusted is 6 Qg5?!
h6 7 Qh4 g5 8 Qxc6 bxc6 9 Qg3
Qxe4 10 Qd4 Qxc3+ 11 bxc3
0-0:±.

6 ... bxc6
7 Qd3 d5
8 e5?!

An unusual continuation which has been featured in a number of correspondence games, but is not often seen in over-the-board tournament play. This might be due to its potentially highly complicated nature (after 8 ... Qg4 9 Qf4 d4) or simply because Black has a reasonably comfortable route to simplification (8 ... Qg4 9 Qf4 f6). Certainly to be avoided is 8 0-0? Qxc3 9 bxc3 dxe4 10 Ke1 0-0 and White remains a pawn down as taking on e4 would lose a piece after the queens are exchanged. The normal continuation, 8 exd5, is considered in the other games

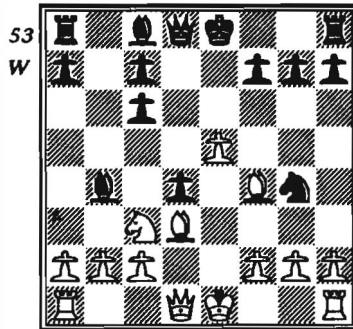
in this chapter.

8 ... Qg4
9 Qf4 d4?! (53)

Black boldly takes up the challenge leading to extremely double-edged play.

a) 9 ... f6! 10 h3 (10 exf6 0-0!)
10 ... Qxe5 11 Qxe5 fxe5 12 Qh5+
Qf8 13 Qxe5 Qd6 (13 ... d4?! 14
0-0-0 dxc3? 15 Qf4+ and 16
Qxb4+-; 13 ... Qe8 14 Qxe8+
Qxe8 15 0-0∞) 14 Qh5 (14 Qe2
is a suggestion of Gligoric's) 14
... Qf6 15 0-0 g6 16 Qh6+ Qf7 17
Qe2 Qd7 18 c3± Davie - Gligoric,
Dundee 1967.

b) 9 ... Qc5 10 0-0 g5?! 11 Qg3
h5 12 Qe2! and White is slightly
better according to van Scheltinga.



10 Qf3!

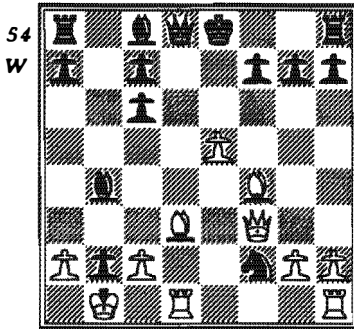
A swashbuckling idea which sets up a violent attack. It is useless to attempt to save the piece: 10 a3? dxc3 11 axb4 cxb2 12 Qb1 Qd4-+.

10 ... dxc3
11 0-0-0 cxb2+

Black unveils a prepared improvement over the standard 11 ... Qd5, which leads to re-

markable complications: 12 Qe4 Wxa2 13 Qxc6+ Ff8 14 Ed8+ Ge7 15 Qg5+ f6 16 exf6+ gxf6 17 Eel+ Qe6 18 Ed7+ Ff8 19 Qh6+ Exh6 20 Wxf6+ Ef7 21 Exf7+ Qxf7 22 Wxh8+ Qg8 23 Wf6+ Qf7 24 Wh8+ $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$ van Schelt-
inga - Cortlever, Amsterdam
1954. However, White has a
significant improvement: 18
 Wxe6+ Wxe6 19 Ed7+ Ff8 20
 Wxg4!! cxb2+ (20 ... Wxg4 21
 Qh6+ Ge8 [21 ... Gg8 22 Qd5+] 22
 Eg7+ Ed8 23 Ehx4 cxb2+ 24
 Eb1 Eb8 25 Qg7 Ee8 26 Qxf6+
 Qe7 27 Qxe7+ Gxe7 28 Ee4+
 Ff7 29 Exe8 Wxe8 30 Qxe8+
 Gxe8 31 Gxb2 winning, accord-
ing to Velickovic) 21 Eb1 Wxg4
22 Qh6+ Ge8 23 Eg7+ Wd7 24
 Exd7 Qe7 25 Wxc7+ Ff7 26
 Qxa8 Exa8 27 Qe3 Ge6 28 Exa7
 Exa7 29 Qxa7 Qd6 30 h3 Qe5 31
 Qc5 f5 32 Qa3 Qd4 33 f3 h5 34
 Qxb2 Qf2 35 g4 1-0 Furnston -
Poletayev, Corr 1967.

12 Gb1 Exf2 (54)



This is the real point of Black's play - by giving back the piece he plans to buy time

to whisk his king to safety. For example: 13 Wxf2 Wf7 14 Qe4 (14 Ehf1 Qe6 15 Qe4 0-0 16 Qxc6 Ead8) 14 ... Qd7 15 Ehf1 0-0!? 16 Wg3 with an unclear position.

13 Qe4!

Having already given up a knight White disdains the capture on f2 in order to sacrifice another exchange! In this way he manages to capture on c6 with his bishop before Black can find time to castle.

13 ... Exd1

14 Qxc6+ Qd7

15 Exd1 0-0

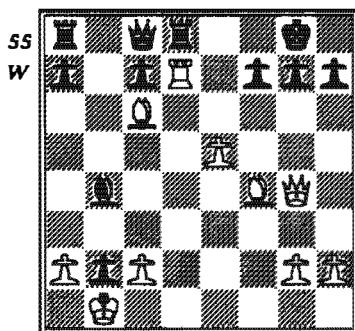
There is nothing to be gained by giving up the queen as Black's exposed king would make his king indefensible: 15 ... Eb8 16 Exd7 Wxd7 17 Wd5 Ed8 18 e6! (18 Qxd7+ Exd7 19 Wxa8+?! [19 Wb5?!] 19 ... Ge7 20 Wxh8?? Qc3-+) 18 ... Wxc6 19 Wxc6+ Ge7 20 Wxc7+ and White is winning according to Morgado and Salgado Allaria.

16 Exd7

The rook takes up a powerful position on the seventh rank, where it strengthens the chances of a direct assault on the king. White's initiative would be quickly dissipated in the ending which would arise after 16 Qxa8 Wxa8 17 Wxa8 (17 Exd7 Wxf3 18 gxf3 Qa3! 19 Ed3 Qe7 20 Gxb2 Ed8-) 17 ... Exa8 18 Exd7 Qa3! 19 Ed3 Qe7 20 Gxb2 Ed8- .

16 ... Wc8

17 Wg4 Ed8 (55)



18 e6!

The culmination of White's strategy: the pawn is immune due to mate on g7.

18 ... ♖xd7
 19 exd7 ♜d8
 20 ♕xa8 ♜xa8
 21 ♕xc7 ♕e7
 22 ♜d4 ♕d8
 23 ♜e5! 1-0

Much more commonly seen than 8 e5 is 8 exd5, which is regarded as the main line of the Scotch Four Knights. In the next game Black follows a long-established plan but runs into a prepared improvement.

**Salov - Nunn
 Wijk aan Zee 1991**

1 e4 e5
 2 ♘f3 ♘c6
 3 ♘c3 ♘f6
 4 d4 exd4
 5 ♘xd4 ♕b4

On this occasion the standard position has arisen from a Four Knights move order.

6 ♘xc6 bxc6

7 ♕d3

A sensible measure as the bishop will be well placed after Black plays ... d5. Other paths give Black at least equality:

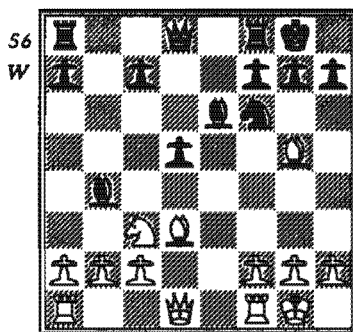
a) 7 ♜d4 ♜e7 8 f3 and now:

a1) 8 ... c5 9 ♜f2 0-0 10 ♕d2 d5 11 0-0-0 - Levenfish.

a2) 8 ... ♕c5 9 ♜d3 ♖b8 10 ♕d2 d5 11 0-0-0 ♜ Bondarevsky - Smyslov, USSR 1944.

b) 7 ♕d2 0-0 8 ♕d3 d5 9 f3 dxe4 (or 9 ... ♕xc3 10 ♕xc3 dxe4 with an equal game according to Keres) 10 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 11 fxe4 ♕c5 - Alekhine - Alexander, Margate 1937.

7 ... d5
 8 exd5 cxd5
 9 0-0 0-0
 10 ♕g5 ♕e6 (56)



The major alternative, 10 ... c6, is analysed in later games in this chapter.

11 ♘e2 h6

The alternatives are examined in the game Rigo - Zysk.

12 ♕h4 ♕d6

The pin can be blocked although this is not good enough for equality: 12 ... ♕e7 13

68 Scotch Four Knights

♠d4 ♘g4 14 f3 ♞d7 15 ♠f5±
Plater - Drieciotowski, Poland
1957.

13 ♠d4

A quick pawn rush on the kingside fails to make any headway: 13 f4?! ♞c5+ 14 ♠h1 ♘g4 15 h3 ♞xe2 16 ♜xe2 ♞e8 17 ♜f3 ♞e3 18 ♞xf6 ♞xf3 19 ♞xd8 ♞xf1+ 20 ♞xf1 ♞xd8♠ Alexander - Smyslov, England - USSR 1954.

13 ... c5

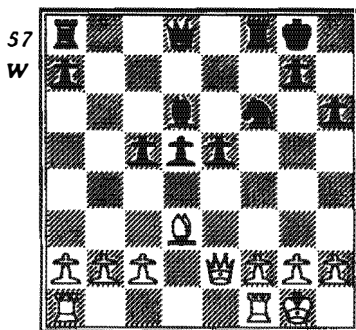
The bishop can also retreat, offering a level game: 13 ... ♞d7 14 ♠f5 ♞xf5 15 ♞xf5 ♞b8 16 b3 ♞e5 17 ♞b1 ♜d6 18 ♘g3 ♞g3 19 hxg3 ♞fe8= Rossetto - Bolbochan, Mar del Plata 1956.

14 ♠xe6

This is a major improvement on the old line: 14 ♠f5 ♞xf5 15 ♞xf5 ♞e5 16 c3 ♞b8 17 f4 ♞c7 18 b3 ♜d6 19 ♜f3 ♞fe8 20 ♞ad1♠ Alexander - Kluger, Amsterdam OI 1954.

14 ... fxe6

15 ♜e2 e5 (57)



16 ♘g6!

After this move it becomes clear that White has the better

chances. Now that ... ♞e8 is ruled out White can set about undermining the central pawns. Less clear is 16 c4 e4 17 ♞c2 ♜b8!.

16 ... ♞b8

Very often in this variation Black strikes at b2 with his rook in this way. However, in this particular circumstance Black would have been better served by 16 ... c4!? 17 b3 cxb3 18 axb3 ♜c7 when White's advantage is minimal.

17 c4!

The queen now protects b2 while the pawn thrust undermines the black pawn centre, which does not have a firm base.

17 ... e4

18 ♞ad1 ♜c7

19 ♠h1

With the intention of 19 ♞xh2 20 g3 trapping the bishop.

19 ... dxc4

20 ♞xf6

White has a pleasant choice here: 20 ♞xe4 g5 21 ♘g3 ♞g3 22 hxg3 ♠g7±.

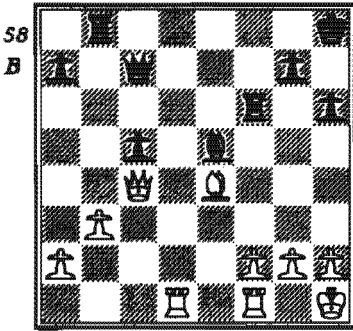
20 ... ♞xf6

21 ♞xe4 ♞e5

22 ♜xc4+ ♠h8

23 b3 (58)

The extra pawn ensures White the advantage, although there are still a few obstacles to overcome before victory can be secured. White is aided by the weakness of the light squares around the black king which offer him various mating



possibilities. Black's chances for a draw rest on the exchange of the major pieces to reach an opposite-coloured bishop ending, which would prove very difficult to win.

- 23 ... ♖bf8
- 24 ♗e2 ♙d4
- 25 f3 ♗e5
- 26 g3 ♖e8
- 27 ♗d3

As all the entry squares have been blocked, White can afford to spend some time improving the position of his pieces. The immediate threat is 28 b4 which would severely undermine the bishop on d4.

- 27 ... ♖d6
- 28 ♖d2 h5
- 29 ♖e2 h4
- 30 gxh4

There is no immediate reason for White to remove the support of his well-established bishop on e4. Black might conjure up some counterplay after 30 f4? ♗f6 31 ♗f3 ♖de6.

- 30 ... ♖h6
- 31 f4

Now that Black's rook is

offside White is able to advance the f-pawn in safety as it would take Black too long to organize his rooks on the e-file.

- 31 ... ♗f6
- 32 ♗f3 ♖xh4
- 33 ♙d3 ♖f8
- Not 33 ... ♖xe2?? 34 ♗a8+.
- 34 ♗g3 ♗h6

If the pawn is snatched off, Black pays a heavy penalty: 34 ... ♖xf4? 35 ♗h3+ ♗h6 36 ♖xf4 ♖xf4 37 ♗c8+-.

- 35 ♗g6 ♖h3
- 36 ♗xh6+ gxh6
- 37 ♙c4

White still enjoys a significant edge thanks to the extra pawn. Clearly 37 ... ♖e3 38 ♖g2 would leave Black in great difficulties but he makes a serious mistake.

- 37 ... ♙e3?
- 38 ♗g2 1-0

In the next game we again see how dangerous White's initiative can be if Black makes even the slightest positional error.

Rigo - Zysk
Budapest 1985

- 1 e4 e5
- 2 ♘f3 ♘c6
- 3 ♘c3 ♘f6
- 4 d4 exd4
- 5 ♘xd4 ♙b4
- 6 ♘xc6 bxc6
- 7 ♙d3 d5

This is an automatic choice

70 *Scotch Four Knights*

in tournament practice to challenge White's hold on the centre. The alternatives are more passive but are fairly sound:

a) 7 ... 0-0 8 0-0 ♖e8 and now:

a1) 9 ♗f3 ♖d6 10 ♖f4 ♖xf4 11 ♗xf4 d6 12 ♖ael ♗e7= Radulov - Planinc, Vrsac 1971.

a2) 9 ♖g5 h6 10 ♖h4:

a21) 10 ... g5?! 11 ♖g3 d6 (11 ... ♖xc3 12 bxc3 ♗xe4 13 ♗h5 ♖g7 14 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 15 f4!+-) 12 e5 dxe5 13 ♖xe5 ♗g4 (13 ... ♖xe5 14 ♖h7+!) 14 ♖g3 f5 15 h3 ♗f6 16 f4± Pomar - Ljubojevic, Las Palmas 1974.

a22) 10 ... d6 11 f4 ♖b7 12 ♖h1 (12 ♗f3!?) 12 ... ♖xc3 13 bxc3 c5 (Puc - Planinc, Ljubljana - Portoroz 1973) 14 ♖e1±.

b) 7 ... d6 and now:

b1) 8 0-0 ♗g4 9 ♖e2 ♗h4 10 ♖xg4 ♗xg4± Schlechter - Lasker, Nuremberg 1896.

b2) 8 ♖g5 h6 9 ♖h4 ♗e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 f4 ♗e6= Wade - Gereben, Monte Carlo 1967.

8 exd5 cxd5

9 0-0 0-0

10 ♖g5 ♖e6

It is incorrect for Black to immediately double White's pawns. This, and Black's other moves, are considered elsewhere in this chapter (Lautier - I. Sokolov and Estevez - Rivera).

11 ♗e2

Not as popular is 11 ♗f3 ♖e7 12 ♖ael ♖b8 and now:

a) 13 ♖e5? ♖xb2 14 ♗b5 c5 15

♖cl ♖b4 16 ♖d2 ♖a4 17 ♗c3 ♖a3 18 ♗b5 ♖a6 19 ♗d4 ♖d6 20 ♗f5 ♖xf5 21 ♖xf5 ♗e4 22 ♖f4 ♖f6 23 ♖el ♖xe5 24 ♖xe5 ♖b6 25 ♗g4 ♗g5 26 ♗xg5 ♗xg5 27 h4 ♗e6 28 ♖e3 f6 29 ♖g3 ♗d4 0-1 A. Thomas - Lane, Paignton 1981.

b) 13 ♗d1 c5 14 ♖f5 ♖b6± Ekstrom - Euwe, Hastings 1945/46.

11 ... ♖d6?! (S9)

Black points the bishop towards the kingside, harbouring attacking ambitions, but this is not an accurate choice. We have already discussed 11 ... h6 in the previous game and there are several other playable alternatives:

a) 11 ... ♖e7 12 ♗f4 and now:

a1) 12 ... ♗d6 13 ♖el ♖ab8 14 ♗f3! h6 15 ♗xe6 fxe6 16 ♖f4 ♗b6 17 ♗h3± Czerniak - Ed. Lasker, Vienna 1951.

a2) 12 ... ♖g4 13 f3 (13 ♗d2!?) 13 ... ♖c8 and now:

a21) 14 ♖xf6?! ♖xf6 15 ♗xd5 ♖xb2 16 ♖b1 with an unclear position.

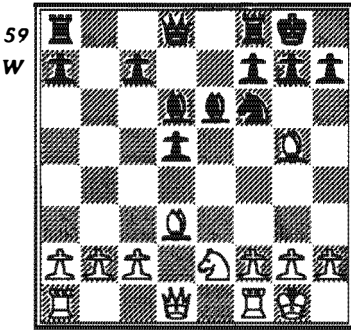
a22) 14 ♗e1 h6 15 ♖xh6 gxh6 16 ♗h4 ♖g7 17 ♖fel (Bebchuk - Baranov, Rostov 1957) 17 ... ♖e8±.

b) 11 ... ♖g4 and now:

b1) 12 c3 ♖e7 13 ♗c2 h6 14 ♖e3 ♖d6= Alexander - Smyslov, Hastings 1954/55.

b2) 12 c4 h6 13 ♖h4 dxc4 14 ♖xc4 ♗xd1 15 ♖fxd1 g5 16 ♖g3 ♗e4= Hector - Wiedenkiller, Malmo 1986.

c) 11 ... ♖b8 12 ♘g3 ♙e7 13 b3
h6 14 ♙e3 c5 15 ♘f5 ♖e8 16
♘xe7+ ♗xe7 17 ♗d2± Czerniak
- Maderma, Mar del Plata 1955.



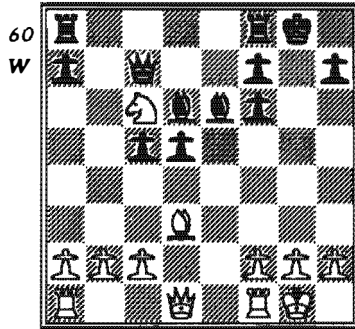
12 ♘d4

This move has a dual function: first, White would like to drop it into c6 and then capture on f6 to double Black's kingside pawns; and second, on d4 the knight is ideally placed to support a general build up of ♙e1, ♗f3 and ♙f5. Also worthy of consideration is long-established 12 f4 c5 (12 ... c6!?) 13 c4 dxc4 14 ♙e4 ♖b8 15 ♘xf6 gxf6 16 ♘g3 f5 17 ♘xf5 ♙e7 18 ♗g4+- Czerniak - Neikircti, Amsterdam 1954.

12 ... c5?

Black is unaware of the danger and takes immediate steps to oust the knight from its powerful outpost. His idea is based on the sequence 13 ♘c6 ♗c7 14 ♘xf6 ♗xc6 when White must retreat the bishop leaving Black with a strong central pawn mass. However, the best chance was 12 ... ♙d7 although Black remains worse.

13 ♘c6 ♗c7
14 ♘xf6 gxf6 (60)



This unpleasant move is necessary here since Black's intended 14 ... ♗xc6 is refuted by 15 ♘xh7+! ♗xh7 16 ♗h5+ ♗g8 17 ♗g5 g6 18 ♗h6 leading to mate. Now the shattered kingside is an open invitation for White to invade and destroy.

15 ♗h5 f5
16 ♗g5+ ♗h8
17 ♗f6+ ♗g8
18 f4!

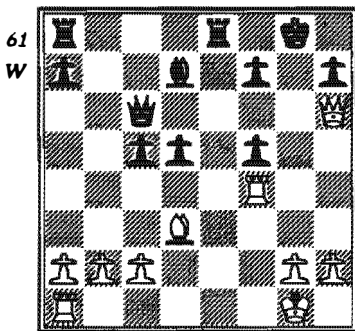
Even though the white knight is trapped, White leaves it undefended in order to bring his other pieces into the attack. Of course, the pawn cannot be taken 18 ... ♘xf4? 19 ♘e7+-.

18 ... ♗xc6
19 ♖f3 ♖fe8

The rook makes room for the king to seek sanctuary via f8.

20 ♗h6 ♘xf4
21 ♖xf4 ♙d7 (61)
22 ♖g4+! 1-0

Black resigned due to 22 ... fxg4 23 ♘xh7+ ♗h8 24 ♙g6+ ♗g8 25 ♗h7+ ♗f8 26 ♗xf7 mate.



Instead of 11 ♞e2 , White can also try 11 ♞b5 . Although this idea used to be considered a drawing variation, Jakovic's surprising 14 ♞e1 breathes new life into White's chances, as we shall see.

Jakovic - Ernst Gausdal 1991

1	e4	e5
2	♞f3	♞c6
3	d4	exd4
4	♞xd4	♞f6
5	♞c3	♞b4
6	♞xc6	bxc6
7	♞d3	d5
8	exd5	cxd5
9	O-O	O-O
10	♞g5	♞e6
11	♞b5	

This is probably the most dynamic possibility. It has a similar theme to 11 ♞e2 as in many cases White will bring the knight to d4. However, White can also go in for complications by a rapid expansion on

his queenside.

11 ... c5
12 a3

This has now become the regular move order in tournament practice. After 12 c3 ♞a5 White can practically force perpetual check but has nothing better:

a) 13 b4 and now:

a1) 13 ... cxb4 14 cxb4 ♞xb4 15 ♞xh7+ ♞xh7 16 ♞b1+ ♞g8 17 ♞xb4 ♞b8 gives Black the better game as the slightly exposed position of the black king is inadequate compensation for the passed pawn, Gabran - Bikov, USSR 1970.

a2) 13 ... a6 14 ♞d6 ♞xd6 16 ♞xf6 ♞c7+ Janosevic - Nabantanovic, Yugoslavia Ch 1956.

b) 13 ♞a4! ♞b6 14 ♞h4 h6 15 ♞xh6 gxh6 16 ♞xh6 c4 (16 ... ♞e4? 17 ♞xe4 dxe4 18 ♞ae1+-) 17 ♞g5+ ♞h8 18 ♞h4+ ♞g7 ½-½ Ivkov - Gligoric, Buenos Aires 1960.

12 ... ♞a5
13 b4 cxb4 (62)

The major alternative involves spurning the pawn offer by 13 ... ♞b6 . A survey of this variation reveals:

a) 14 bxc5 ♞xc5 and now:

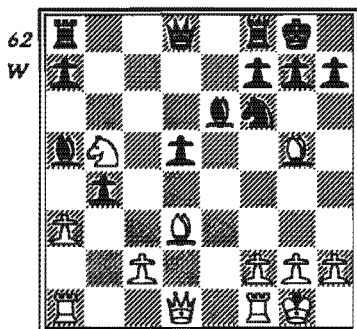
a1) 15 ♞f3 h6 16 ♞xf6 ♞xf6 17 ♞xf6 gxf6 18 c3 ♞fc8 19 ♞fc1 ♞ab8 20 ♞f1 ♞d7= Gheorghiu - Suba, Prague 1985.

a2) 15 c3 h6 16 ♞h4 ♞c8 17 ♞d4 ♞d6 18 ♞e1- .

b) 14 c3 h6 15 ♞h4 ♞b8 16 a4 a5 17 bxc5 ♞xc5 18 ♞e1 and

White has slightly the better game, Garcia - Panno, Mar del Plata 1959.

c) 14 ♖f3?! ♜c8 15 c3= Panno.



14 ♖e1!

A startling move which is based on a clever attacking idea. The a-pawn is discarded and can even be captured with a discovered attack. A more routine continuation is 14 axb4 ♖xb4 (14 ... ♖b6 15 ♖a6) and now White has:

a) 15 ♗xa7 h6 16 ♖h4 ♖b6 17 ♖a6 ♖b7 18 ♖xf6 ♖xa7= Barsky - A. Geiler, USSR 1960.

b) 15 ♖xa7 ♖xa7 16 ♗xa7 h6 17 ♗c6 ♖d6 18 ♖xf6 ♖xc6 19 ♖f3 ♖c7 (19 ... gxf6? 20 ♖g3+ ♖h8 21 ♖h4 ♖g7 22 ♖xb4+-) 20 ♖d4 ♜c8 21 ♖b1= Salazar - Sanchez-Guisado, Vigo 1985.

14 ... bxa3

This is the critical test of White's idea but perhaps Black should adopt a more circum-spect course of action: 14 ... ♖b6 15 axb4 h6 16 ♖h4 ♜e8 17 ♖d2 (17 ♖e5? a6 18 ♗d6 ♖c7 19 ♖xf6 gxf6 20 ♖g3+ ♖h8+-) 17 ... a6 (17 ... ♗e4 18 ♖xd8 ♗xd2

19 ♖xb6 axb6 20 ♗c7! ♖xa1 21 ♖xa1 ♜c8 22 ♖a8+-) 18 ♗c3 ♖c7 19 ♖g3 ♖xg3 20 hxg3 ♖d6 21 ♖f4±.

15 ♖xf6 gxf6

Black is obliged to loosen his kingside pawn barrier in view of 15 ... ♖xe1 (15 ... ♖xf6? 16 ♖xa5) 16 ♖xd8 picking up a piece.

16 ♖e3 ♖b6

17 ♖h6

White is understandably lured by visions of a mating attack but a more positional approach would have been more appropriate, exploiting Black's crippled pawns. For example: 17 ♗d4 ♖xd4 (17 ... ♜e8? 18 ♖h6 ♖xd4 19 ♖xh7+ ♖h8 20 ♖xa3+-) 18 ♖xd4±.

17 ... f5

18 ♖xa3

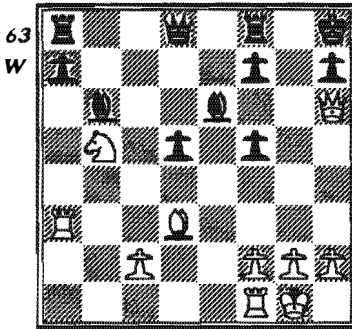
Now the rook is brought into the attack against Black's beleaguered king. Obviously White is not prepared to settle for a draw: 18 ♗d6 ♖xd6 19 ♖xf5 ♜fd8 20 ♖xh7+ ♖h8 21 ♖g6+ ♖g8 22 ♖h7+ with perpetual check.

18 ... ♖h8?! (63)

Ernst has suggested that Black could have put up much stiffer resistance here with 18 ... f6!:

a) 19 ♜e1 ♖d7 20 ♖f1 (with the idea of 20 ... ♖xe8 21 ♜g3+ ♖h8 22 ♖xe6!+-) 20 ... ♜f7! when Black can struggle on.

b) 19 g4 ♖h8 29 gxf5 ♖f7 with an unclear position.



19 ♖d6! ♔d4!

An essential move to ward off the attack. If instead 19 ... ♖g8? 20 ♔xf5 ♖g7 21 ♖g3! ♗g8 22 ♔xe6 fxe6 23 ♖xg7 ♗xg7 24 ♗xe6+- (White has won too many pawns). The other alternative 19 ... ♗xd6? fails to 20 ♔xf5 with mate looming on h7.

20 ♔xf5

White decides to keep his light-squared bishop in order to maintain attacking chances against the vulnerable h7-square. An advantage is also preserved after 20 ♔xf5 ♔xf5 21 ♔xf5 ♗f6 22 ♗h3 (not 22 ♗h5 ♔c3! 23 ♗f3 d4 with an unclear position) 22 ... ♖ac8 23 ♖d3 ♔b6±.

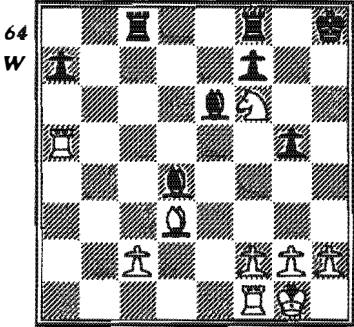
20 ... ♗f6
21 ♗h5 ♔c5

Black reacts well to the crisis, avoiding the plausible 21 ... ♔b6 22 ♔b6 ♗g7 23 ♖a4 (intending ♖h4) 23 ... d4 24 ♖e1 with a clear advantage.

22 ♔e3! h6
23 ♖a5 ♖ac8
24 ♔xd5 ♗g5
25 ♗xg5?!

The technical task in the endgame would have been somewhat easier after 25 ♔f6! ♗xh5 (25 ... ♗xf6 26 ♖xc5) 26 ♔xh5 when White remains a clear pawn up against a structure of three isolated pawns. Now, however, the connected black g- and f-pawns are potentially an asset rather than a hindrance.

25 ... ♗xg5
26 ♔f6 ♔d4 (64)



27 ♔e4

The game has reached a critical juncture. White must try to consolidate his advantage and utilize the extra pawn. However, Black has good drawing chances due to his pair of bishops and the fragility of White's f2-pawn. Perhaps White should have preferred the more complicated variation: 27 ♔h7?! ♖g8 28 ♖xg5 (28 ♔xg5? ♔c3 29 ♖b5 a6±) 28 ... ♖xg5 (28 ... f6 29 ♖h5 ♗g7 with a slight edge to White) 29 ♔xg5 a5 30 ♖e1 ♔d5 31 ♖d1 a4 32 ♔e4 ♔xe4 33 ♖xd4 ♖xc2 34 h3 a3?! (34 ... ♔c6 would leave

an unclear position) 35 ♖xe4 a2
 36 ♖a4 f6 37 ♗e4 ♖c1+ 38 ♖h2
 a1(♗) 39 ♖xa1 ♖xa1 40 ♗xf6 and
 White is slightly better accord-
 ing to Ernst.

27 ... f6
 28 ♖d1 ♗b6
 29 ♖a4 ♖c6
 30 h3 ♗f5
 31 ♖b1 ♗h7
 32 ♖b5 ♖d8
 33 g4

White identifies the f6-pawn
 as a possible target and uses
 the g-pawn as a restraint.

33 ... ♖e6
 34 ♖g2 ♗xe4+
 35 ♗xe4 ♖d2
 36 ♖f5 ♖g7
 37 ♗d3?!

It would have been more
 accurate to play 37 ♖c4 to
 prevent the note to move 38.
 Although White still has good
 practical chances, Black's
 activity makes it difficult for
 him and in the end Black man-
 ages to hold the draw. The
 game concluded as follows:

37 ... ♖e5
 38 ♖f3 ♖d1?!
 38 ... ♖e3!
 39 ♖c4 ♗c5
 40 ♖a4 ♗b6
 41 ♖c4 ♗c5
 42 ♖f5! ♖xf5
 43 gxf5 ♗b6
 44 f4 gxf4
 45 ♖xf4 ♖d2+
 46 ♖f3 ♖f2+
 47 ♖e4 ♖xf4+
 48 ♖xf4 a5

49 ♗b5 ♖h6
 50 c4?
 50 ♖g4!
 50 ... ♖h5
 51 ♖e4 ♖h4!
 52 ♖d5 ♖xh3
 53 c5 ♗c7
 54 ♖e6 ♗e5
 ♗-♗

Another natural course for
 Black in the main line of the
 Scotch Four Knights is 10 ... c6.
 In our next main game we look
 at the new move 11 ♗a4, which
 was introduced to grandmaster
 practice by the young French
 Grandmaster Joel Lautier.

Lautier - I. Sokolov Correze (3) 1992

1 e4 e5
 2 ♗f3 ♗c6
 3 d4 exd4
 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6
 5 ♗c3 ♗b4
 6 ♗xc6 bxc6
 7 ♗d3 d5
 8 exd5 cxd5 (65)

The standard and more
 explored continuation. How-
 ever, from time to time Black
 dabbles with the relatively
 neglected 8 ... ♗e7+. The un-
 conventional 9 ♖f1?! cxd5 10
 ♗g5 c6 11 ♗f3 h6? 12 ♗b5! gave
 White a tremendous attack in
 Velimirovic - Lukic, Yugoslav
 Ch 1962, but 11 ... 0-0 secures
 equality. So White should
 revert to the usual method of

76 Scotch Four Knights

blocking the check with 9 ♖e2. Play can then continue:

a) 9 ... ♗xe2+ 10 ♖xe2 and now:

a1) 10 ... ♖xc3 11 bxc3 cxd5 12 ♖a3 and White is slightly better according to Keres.

a2) 10 ... ♗xd5 11 ♗e4 f5 12 ♗g5 0-0 13 ♖d1 h6 14 ♗f3 ♖d6 15 ♗f1 ♖d7? 16 ♖c4 and White wins a pawn, Rossolimo - Gligoric, Amsterdam 1950.

a3) 10 ... cxd5 and:

a31) 11 ♗b5 and now:

a311) 11 ... ♖d8 12 ♖d1 c6 (12 ... ♖e8+ 13 ♗f1 c6 14 ♗d4 ♖d7 15 ♖g5± Cortiever - Pfeiffer, Amsterdam 01 1954) 13 ♗d4 ♖c7 14 c4 ♖d6 15 h3 ♖d7 16 ♗f1 c5 17 ♗c2 d4 18 b4 cxb4 19 ♖b2 ♖ae8 20 ♖xd4 a5 21 ♖e1= Rodriguez - Mikhalchisin, Havana 1982.

a312) 11 ... ♖a5 12 ♖f4 ♖d8 (12 ... c5? 13 ♖c7 ♖xc7 14 ♗xc7+ ♖d8 15 ♗xa8 c4, van der Houette - C. Flear, Brussels 1988, and now 16 ♖d2! cxd3 17 cxd3 intending ♖cl, winning) 13 ♖hd1 ♖d7 14 c4 ♖b8 15 ♖ab1 ♖e8+ 16 ♗f1 a6 17 ♗d4 ♖b6± Chalfen - Muskinowitsch, Moscow 1979.

a32) 11 ♖b5+?! ♖d7 12 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 13 ♖d1 ♖he8+ 14 ♗f1 ♖xc3 15 bxc3 ♖c6 16 ♖e3 ♗e4 17 ♖d3 ♗d6 18 ♖d4 f6 19 ♖g3 ♖e7 20 ♖e1 ♗e4 21 ♗g1 ♖d6 22 ♖ge3 c5 23 f3 cxd4 24 cxd4 f5 25 fxe4 fxe4 26 ♖a3 ♖c8 27 c3 ♖b7 28 ♗f2 ♖b2+ 29 ♖e2 e3+! 0-1 V. Knox - Wells, British Ch 1991.

b) 9 ... ♗xd5 10 ♗xe7+ ♖xe7 11 a3 and now:

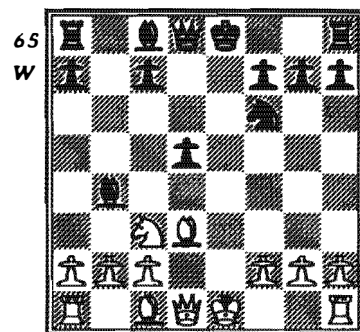
b1) 11 ... ♖xc3+ 12 bxc3 ♖e8 13 ♖d2 ♖f5 14 0-0-0 ♖xd3 15 cxd3 with a small edge for White, Braga - Weermals, Dubai 1986.

b2) 11 ... ♖a5 12 b4! and now:

b21) 11 ... ♗xc3+ 12 bxa5 ♗d5 14 0-0± Czerniak - Fenoglio, Argentine Ch 1949.

b22) 12 ... ♖xb4 (12 ... ♖b6 13 ♗e2±) 13 axb4 ♗xc3 14 ♖b2 ♗d5 15 ♖xg7 ♖d8 16 ♖d4 when the formidable pair of bishops gives White the advantage, Czerniak - Rellstab, Reggio Emilia 1951.

c) 9 ... cxd5 10 ♗xe7+ ♖xe7 11 ♖d2! (11 0-0 ♖d8 12 a3 ♖c5= Czerniak - Portisch, Amsterdam 1953) 11 ... c6 12 0-0-0 ♖d8 13 ♗a4 ♖d6 14 ♖e3 ♗f8 15 h3 h6 16 ♖hel± Radulov - Pinter, 1978.



9 0-0 0-0
10 ♖g5 c6
11 ♗a4

This move has revitalised White's chances in the Scotch Four Knights. Most commentators do not even consider it because the knight routinely

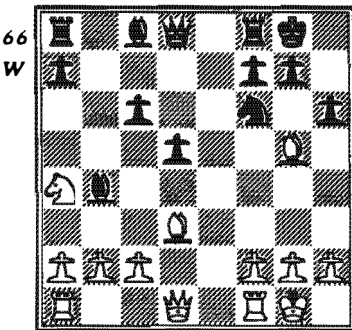
heads for d4 or f4 via e2 in this variation. White's plan is to restrict Black's queenside activity by fixing the c6- and d5-pawns, while at the same time building up his own forces on the kingside. Note that the knight on a4 also defends the vulnerable b2-pawn and nullifies ... ♖b8.

11 ... h6 (66)

It is natural for Black to deflect the pin but other continuations should also be considered:

a) 11 ... ♗e7 12 ♖e1 ♗e6 13 c3 ♗c7 14 ♗f3 ♖fe8 15 ♖e3 ♘g4 16 ♗f4 ♗d7 17 ♖e2 c5 18 b3 ♘f6 19 h3 ♗d6 20 ♖ael ♗c7 21 ♗g5 ♘d7 22 ♗h5 ♘f8 23 ♗d2 ♗d7 24 f4± Lautier - I. Sokolov, Correze (S) 1992.

b) 11 ... ♗d6 12 ♗f3 ♖e8 13 h3 ♗a5 14 ♗xf6 ♗xa4 15 b3 ♗f4 16 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 17 ♗d4 ♗d6 18 ♖fel ♖xe1+ 19 ♖xe1 ♗e6 20 c4 dxc4 21 ♗xc4 ♗xc4 22 bxc4 ♖f8 23 ♖dl ♖d8 24 ♖f1 ♗e7 25 ♖e2 a6 26 ♖d3= Adams - Piket, Dortmund 1992.



12 ♗h4 ♗e7

A cautious response. Also possible are:

a) 12 ... ♗d6 13 ♖e1 ♗d7 14 c3 ♖e8 15 ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 16 ♗f3 c5 17 ♗c2 ♖b8 18 ♖e1 ♗xa4 19 ♗xa4 ♖xb2 20 ♗f5 g5 21 ♗xg5 hxg5 22 ♗xg5+ ♖f8 23 g3 ♗e7 24 ♗h6+ ♖g8 25 ♗g5+= Degraeve - Lane, Parthenay 1992.

b) 12 ... ♖e8 13 c4 ♗e6 14 ♖cl ♖b8 15 cxd5 ♗xd5 16 ♗c4 ♗d6 17 b3 ♗e5 18 ♗xd5 cxd5 19 ♖c5 g5 20 ♗g3 ♗d6 21 ♗c2 ♖e6 22 ♖a5 ♘e4 23 ♖xa7 ♘g3 24 hxg3 ♗d4 25 ♖a5 ♖be8 26 ♗d3 ♗e5 27 ♘c5 ♖6e7 28 ♗f3 ♗c7 29 b4 ♗c6 30 ♘b3 ♗c4 31 ♗dl ♗b6 32 ♖xd5 ♖e2 33 ♗d3 ♗xb4? 34 ♖b5 1-0 Lautier - Campos-Moreno, Manila O1 1992.

13 ♖e1 ♗e6
14 c3

A simple but correct move. The unorthodox knight on the edge of the board — well with the text to cut short Black's ambitions of pushing the central pawns.

14 ... ♖e8
15 ♗c2 ♖b8
16 ♗d4 a5
17 ♖e3

White calmly increases the pressure by doubling rooks on the e-file, intending a future f4 to provoke concessions from Black.

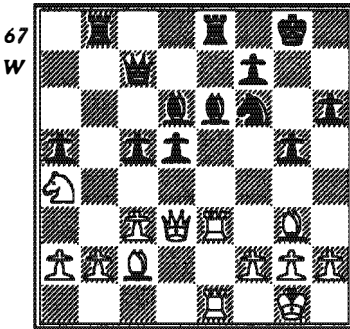
17 ... ♗c7
18 ♖ael c5
19 ♗d3

Although Black has finally been able to mobilize his

78 Scotch Four Knights

pawns, this merely allows Lautier to tighten his grip. Now Black is forced to take evasive action to prevent infiltration by 20 $\underline{O}xf6$ $\underline{O}xf6$ 21 $\underline{W}h7+$.

19 ... g5
20 $\underline{O}g3$ $\underline{O}d6$ (67)



21 $\underline{K}xe6!$ 1-0

Black resigned in view of 21 ... $\underline{K}xe6$ 22 $\underline{K}xe6$ $fxe6$ 23 $\underline{O}xd6$ $\underline{W}xd6$ 24 $\underline{W}g6+$ $\underline{K}f8$ 25 $\underline{W}xf6++$.

Instead of 11 $\underline{K}a4$, White can also try the more traditional 11 $\underline{W}f3$ and 11 $\underline{K}e2$, which are discussed in the following game.

Estevez - Rivera Sagua la Grande 1988

1	e4	e5
2	$\underline{K}f3$	$\underline{K}c6$
3	d4	$exd4$
4	$\underline{K}xd4$	$\underline{K}f6$
5	$\underline{K}c3$	$\underline{O}b4$
6	$\underline{K}xc6$	$bxc6$
7	$\underline{O}d3$	d5
8	$exd5$	$cxd5$
9	O-O	O-O
10	$\underline{O}g5$	c6

Less common alternatives are:

a) 10 ... $\underline{O}e7$ 11 $\underline{O}xf6$ $\underline{O}xf6$ and now:

a1) 12 $\underline{W}h5$ and:

a11) 12 ... h6? 13 $\underline{W}xd5$ $\underline{W}xd5$ 14 $\underline{K}xd5$ $\underline{O}xb2$ 15 $\underline{K}ab1$ $\underline{O}e5$ 16 $\underline{K}fel$ $\underline{O}d6$ 17 $\underline{K}e7+$ and White is slightly better according to Keres.

a12) 12 ... g6 13 $\underline{W}xd5$ and now:

a121) 13 ... $\underline{W}xd5$ 14 $\underline{K}xd5$ $\underline{O}xb2$ 15 $\underline{K}ab1$ ± Lutikov - Tarve, Parnu 1971.

a122) 13 ... $\underline{O}e6!$ 14 $\underline{W}a5$ c6 15 $\underline{W}c5$ $\underline{W}b6$ 16 $\underline{K}a4$ $\underline{W}xc5$ 17 $\underline{K}xc5$ $\underline{O}xb2$ = Hort - Short, Dubai Ol 1986.

a2) 12 $\underline{K}xd5$ $\underline{O}xb2$ 13 $\underline{K}b1$ and now:

a21) 13 ... $\underline{O}a3?$ 14 $\underline{W}f3$ c6 15 $\underline{K}f4$ $\underline{W}c7$ 16 $\underline{O}xh7+$ $\underline{K}xh7$ 17 $\underline{W}xa3$ ± Donner - Dunkelblum, Munich 1954.

a22) 13 ... $\underline{O}e5?$ 14 $\underline{O}xh7+$ $\underline{K}xh7$ 15 $\underline{W}h5+$ $\underline{K}g8$ 16 $\underline{W}xe5+-$.

a23) 13 ... $\underline{O}f6!$ 14 $\underline{W}h5$ h6 15 $\underline{O}e4$ c6 16 $\underline{K}b4$ $\underline{O}e6$ 17 $\underline{K}xc6$ $\underline{W}c7$ ±.

Instead of 11 $\underline{O}xf6$, perhaps best is 11 $\underline{W}f3$ which will transpose to the main lines after 11 ... c6 or 11 ... $\underline{O}e6$.

b) The other option for Black is to eliminate the c3-knight but this has the drawback of leaving White with a pair of bishops on an open board, e.g. 10 ... $\underline{O}xc3$ 11 $bxc3$ h6 12 $\underline{O}h4$ (12 $\underline{O}e3$ $\underline{K}g4$ 13 $\underline{O}c5$ $\underline{K}e8$) 12 ... $\underline{W}d6$ 13 c4! (13 $\underline{W}f3$ $\underline{O}g4$ 14 $\underline{W}g3$ $\underline{W}xg3$ 15

$\text{Qxg3 } \frac{1}{2}\text{-}\frac{1}{2}$ Hort - Vasyukov, Moscow 1962) and now:

b) 13 ... dxc4 14 Qxc4 xf4 15 Qxf6 xf6 16 $\text{Bb1 } \frac{1}{2}\text{-}\frac{1}{2}$ Trajkovic - Vasyukov, Belgrade 1961.

b2) 13 ... Qa6 (13 ... d4 14 xf3 !) 14 cxd5 Qxd3 15 Qxf6 fxd5 16 Qxg7 Qxg7 17 cxd3+ - (the exposed black king is a handicap).

11 xf3 (68)

A major alternative is 11 e2 , which gives Black several alternatives:

a) 11 ... Qg4 12 c3 Qd6 13 xc2 h6 14 Qh4 Qd7 15 Qh7+ Qh8 16 Qf5 Qxf5 17 xf5 xc8 18 xc8 Baxc8 19 Qxf6 gxf6 20 d4 Bfe8 21 Bfel Bee5 22 Qf1 a5 23 g3 a4 24 f4 Bxel+ 25 Bxel h5 26 d5 Christiansen - Gelfand, Munich 1992.

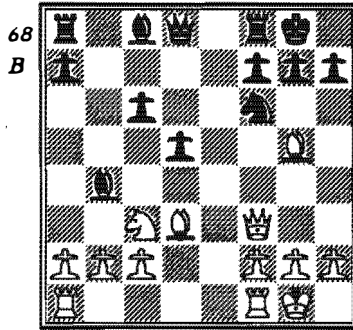
b) 11 ... h6 12 Qh4 and now:

b) 12 ... Qd6 13 d4 c5 14 d5 Qe5 (14 ... Qxf5 15 Qxf5 Bb8 = Lutz - Yusupov, Munich 1992) 15 c3 Bee8 16 Bee1 Qxf5 17 Qxf5 xd6 18 Qg3 Qxg3 19 hxg3 Bxe1+ 20 Bxe1 Bee8 21 $\text{xd1 } \frac{1}{2}\text{-}\frac{1}{2}$ Ljubojevic - Nikolic, Wijk aan Zee 1988.

b2) 12 ... c5 13 c3 Qa5 14 Bee1 Bb8 15 Bb1 Qb7 16 d3 ! g5 17 d5 gxh4 18 xd2 Qc8 19 fxh6 Qxf5 20 Qxf5 d4 21 Bg5+ Qh8 22 fxh4+ Qg7 23 Bg5+ Qh8 24 Bee4 1-0 Afek - Jacobs, Southampton 1986.

11 ... Qe7

The bishop normally retreats at this stage to lend support to the c- and d-pawns. An inde-



pendent line is 11 ... h6 ? 12 Qxf6 fxf6 13 fxf6 gxf6 14 e2 Qd6 and now:

a) 15 d4 c5 16 d5 Qe5 17 f4 Qxb2 18 Bab1 a6 19 d7 Bb8 20 fxd5 Qe6 21 c4 Qxf5 22 cxd5 Bb5 = Parsonage - Harks, Adelaide 1986/87.

b) 15 d3 Qe5 16 c3 Bb8 17 f4 Qc7 18 b3 Bee8 19 Bae1 Bxe1 20 Bxe1 Qf8 21 d5 Qd8 22 Qf2 a5 = Sveshnikov - Yusadin, USSR 1986.

12 h3 (69)

This is slightly unusual; previously 12 Bae1 was more often seen:

a) 12 ... h6 ? 13 Qxh6 gxh6 14 Qe3 and now:

a) 14 ... Qd6 ? 15 fxh6 Qd7 16 f4 Qc5+ 17 Qh1 Bee8 18 Bxe8+ Qxe8 19 Bf3 d4 20 Bg3 f6 21 Bxg4+ Qf7 22 Bg7+ Qe6 23 f5+ Qe5 24 g3 1-0 van Houtte - El Haddahoui, Brussels 1988.

a2) 14 ... Qe6 15 fxh6 Qd6 16 Bg5+ Qh8 17 f4 Bee8 18 Bf3 d4 19 fxh5+ Qg7 20 Bg3+ Qf8 21 Bxg8+ Qxg8 22 fxh7+ Qf8 23 fxh6+ Qg8 24 Qh7+ Qh8 25 Qf5+ Qg8 26 fxh7+ Qf8 27 fxh8+

♞e7 28 ♞xe6+! Rublevsky - Novik, Sochi 1990.

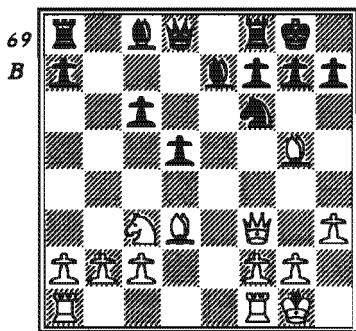
a3) 14 ... ♞e8 15 ♜xh6 ♜c7 16 ♞e3 ♝g4 17 h3 d4 18 ♞g3 ♜e5 19 f4+- Miyasaka - Tarazi, Siegen Ol 1970.

a4) 14 ... d4! 15 ♜xh6 ♜d6 16 ♜g5+ (16 f4? ♞e4!) 16 ... ♜h8 17 ♞xe7 ♜xe7 18 ♞e4?! (18 ♜h6+=) 18 ... ♞g8! (the correct defence, suggested by Euwe) 19 ♜h5+ ♜g7 20 ♞f6! (20 f4? f5! 21 ♞f3 ♞h6 22 ♞h3 ♞g4-+) 20 ... ♜xf6 21 ♜h4+ ♜e6 22 ♞e1+ ♜d7 23 ♞xe7+ ♞xe7 24 ♜xd4+=.

b) 12 ... ♞e8 13 ♞e2 ♞g4? (13 ... h6!?) 14 ♞f4 ♞f6 15 ♞g3 ♞d7 16 h3 ♞e5 17 ♞xe5 ♞xe5 18 ♞xh7+- Condie - Thomas, Oakham 1986.

c) 12 ... ♞e6 13 ♞e2 c5 14 ♞f5 ♜d7 15 ♞xe6 fxe6 16 ♞f4 ♞e4= Bikov - Lilienthal, USSR 1962.

d) 12 ... ♞b8 13 ♞d1 (13 b3?! ♞b4) 13 ... ♞e8 14 h3 h6 15 ♞h4 ♞e6 16 b3 ♞b4= Singer - Samisch, Rogaska Slatina 1929.



12 ... ♞e6!?

A more cautious continuation is 12 ... ♞e8 13 ♞fel ♞e6 14 ♞e2± Radulov - M. Kovacs,

Decin 1976.

13 ♞e2

White continues in accepted fashion by preparing ♞d4 and ♞fel to undermine the bishop on e6.

13 ... ♞d7

14 ♞xe7 ♜xe7

Black tries to ease the tension with an exchange of pieces.

15 ♞fel

Another option is 15 ♞f4 ♞ab8 16 ♞fel ♜f6 17 b3 ♞b4 18 ♞xe6 fxe6 19 ♜e3 e5 20 ♜xa7 ♞f7 21 f3 ♞f4 22 ♜e3 ♜g5 23 ♜h2 ♜h5 24 ♜e2 ♜h6 25 ♞f1 ♜d6 26 ♜h1 with an unclear position, Popov - Orlov, Leningrad 1991.

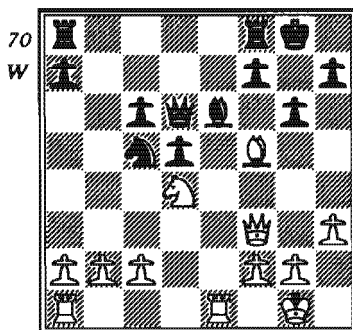
15 ... ♞c5

16 ♞d4 ♜d6

17 ♞f5!

White snatches the chance to increase the pressure on e6. If the bishop is taken then a knight on f5 will be more useful in an attack focused on g7.

17 ... g6 (70)



18 b4!

At a stroke Black's game collapses. The threat to the bishop on f5 is ignored in favour of a counterstroke against the black knight.

18 ... ♖e4

This is the best chance for Black; White can look forward to a straightforward victory after 18 ... ♖xf5 (18 ... gxf5 19 bxc5 ♜xc5 20 ♜g3+ ♕h8 21 ♜e5+ ♕g8 22 ♜e3+-) 19 ♖xf5 gxf5 20 bxc5 ♜xc5 21 ♜g3+ ♕h8 22 ♜e5+ f6 (22 ... ♕g8 23 ♜e3+-) 23 ♜xf5 intending 24 ♜e6 and 25 ♜ae1+-.

19 ♖xe4 dxe4

20 ♜f6

The most accurate continuation, prohibiting any chance of counterplay as in the variation 20 ♜xe4 ♖d5!, when Black's control of the a8-h1 diagonal offers some compensation for the pawn.

20 ... ♜d5

21 c4! ♜d7

This is abject retreat but if 21 ... ♜xc4? 22 ♜e1 ♜d3 23 ♖xc6 ♜fe8 24 ♖e7+ ♕f8 25 ♜c7 and mate on h8 is inevitable.

22 ♜xe4 ♜ac8

23 ♜ae1 a5

24 a3 axb4

25 axb4 ♜b8

Black puts up a stubborn

resistance despite the pawn deficit and the dominating central presence of the white pieces.

26 b5 cxb5

27 cxb5 ♜d8

28 ♜xe6! fxe6

29 ♜xe6+ ♕h8

30 ♖c6 ♜b6

31 ♜e5+

It is also perfectly acceptable to enter an ending a clear two pawns up since 31 ♖xb8! ♜xf2+ 32 ♕h1 ♜xb8 33 ♜e5+ wins.

31 ... ♕g8

32 ♖e7+ ♕f7

33 ♖d5 ♜d8

34 ♖c7 ♜b6

35 ♖e6 ♜f6

36 ♜xf6+ 1-0

Conclusion

Recent evidence suggests that the Scotch Four Knights is more than a drawing weapon; it can also be used as a good practical means of forcing Black to play accurate positional moves in order to achieve roughly equal chances. In particular, the new ideas of Salov's and Lautier's prove that even at the highest level White can win with the Scotch Four Knights.

8 Mieses Variation: 8 ... ♖b6

Although the Scotch Four Knights is clearly nothing like as innocuous as its reputation, modern grandmaster practice has in fact concentrated on an alternative variation for White, 5 ♖xc6 bxc6 6 e5. This was successfully introduced to top-level practice by Mieses, who played it at the 1895 Hastings tournament and elsewhere, although Botterill and Harding doubt whether it was actually his 'invention'.

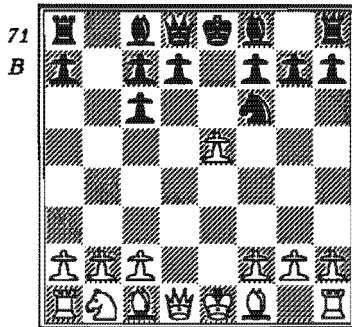
With 6 e5 White aims to establish a space advantage and rapid mobilization of his pieces. Black's problem piece is his queen's bishop, which is often blocked out of the game on a6 by a white pawn on c4. It is difficult for Black to organize the freeing move ... d5, so usually his counterchances rest on the vulnerability of the advanced white e-pawn. If this pawn is supported by f4 this leaves numerous holes behind the extended pawn which Black may well be able to exploit.

The main line of the Mieses Variation runs 6 ... ♖e7 7 ♖e2 ♖d5 8 c4 when Black has a

choice between two main continuations, 8 ... ♖b6 and 8 ... ♖a6. In this chapter we shall discuss the former of these which appears to offer White good chances of an advantage, as evidenced by two wins by the World Champion.

Kasparov - Karpov World Championship Lyon (16) 1990

- | | | |
|---|---------|------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♖f3 | ♖c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♖xd4 | ♖f6 |
| 5 | ♖xc6 | bxc6 |
| 6 | e5 (71) | |



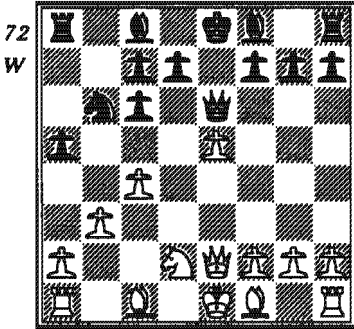
This is the characteristic move of the Mieses Variation.

- 6 ... ♖e7

7 ♖e2 ♘d5
 8 c4 ♘b6
 9 ♘d2 ♖e6

Black's alternatives at this juncture are analysed in the illustrative game Shirov - Agdestein.

10 b3 a5 (72)



A natural response, planning to establish a bishop on b4 and reserving the right to undermine White's queenside with ... a4. However, in itself this move does nothing to assist Black's retarded piece development. The alternatives, 10 ... ♖b4 and 10 ... ♖e7, are analysed in the illustrative game Kasparov - Piket.

11 ♖b2 ♖b4

This is rather slow: a more consistent approach is 11 ... a4 although White still has the better game. Play might continue 12 ♖e3 ♖b4 13 ♖d3 and now:

a) 13 axb3 14 axb3 ♖xa1+ 15 ♖xa1 0-0 16 0-0 and White's space advantage can be consolidated after ♘f3.

b) 13 ... d6 14 0-0-0 dxe5 15

♖xe5 when the ending is good for White.

c) 13 ... d5 14 0-0 (with the idea of ♘f3) 14 ... ♖xd2 15 ♖xd2 dxc4 16 bxc4 ♘xc4 17 ♖xc4 ♖xc4 18 ♖a3 when the black king is stuck in the middle of the board.

12 a3 ♖xd2+

13 ♖xd2 d5?!

Black's original intention was to relieve the pressure immediately by trading off one of White's bishops. However, in that case White is able to undertake a dangerous attack: 13 ... a4 14 c5 ♘d5 15 b4 ♖a6 (15 ... f5 16 ♖c4! ♖a6 17 ♖a2±; 15 ... 0-0!?) 16 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 17 0-0 intending f4. However, the game continuation is unsatisfactory for Black; he should have tried 13 ... 0-0!? 14 0-0-0 when the position would still be double-edged.

14 cxd5 cxd5

15 ♖c1 0-0

Black takes the best practical course, hoping to exploit White's undeveloped kingside in return for a pawn. The alternatives were no better:

a) 15 ... c6 16 ♖d3 ♖b7 (16 ... 0-0 17 ♖c2) 17 0-0 when the prospect of f4 presents grave difficulties for Black.

b) 15 ... a4? 16 ♖xc7 axb3 17 ♖b5+ ♖d7 18 ♖b4+-.

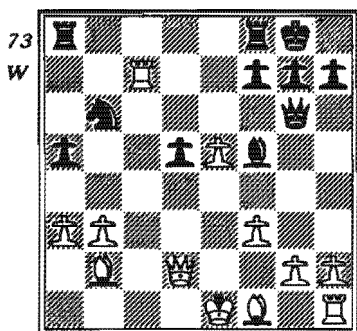
c) 15 ... ♖a7 16 a4±.

16 ♖xc7 ♖g6

A more provocative try was 16 ... d4?!, but Kasparov casts

doubt on this idea in his analysis: 17 ♖xd4 ♗xb3 18 ♚e2 ♚a6 (18 ... ♚e6 19 ♚d1±) 19 e6! f6 20 ♗g4 g6 21 ♗h4 h5 22 ♚xf6+-. White's rook on the seventh is too powerful an influence for Black to ignore.

17 f3 ♚f5 (73)



18 g4!

A bold way to contest Black's command of the b1-h7 diagonal, which would otherwise enable Black to infiltrate with ... ♖c2 after an exchange of rooks on c8. Although the advance on the kingside weakens the pawn structure, White must break up the co-ordination of Black's pieces. Of course not 18 ... ♚xg4? 19 ♖g1 ♗b1+ 20 ♖c1+-.

18 ... ♚b1
19 ♚b5 ♖ac8
20 ♖xc8 ♖xc8
21 0-0 h5
22 h3?!

The opening phase has been successful for White and he now enjoys a clear advantage, based on his extra pawn, two active bishops and the probab-

ility of creating a passed pawn on the queenside. The test is a calm approach with the long-term plan of concentrating his pieces on a kingside attack. However, Kasparov himself pointed out a quicker way of ending the game: 22 ♗d4! hxg4 23 ♗xg4 ♚f5 (23 ... ♗xg4+ 24 fxg4 ♚e4 25 ♖c1+-) 24 ♗xg6 fxg6 25 ♖c1 with a clear advantage.

22 ... hxg4

23 hxg4 ♚c2

Black cannot make any impression even with an invasion of the second rank: 23 ... ♖c2?! 24 ♗d4 ♗h6 25 ♖f2 ♗h3 (25 ... ♗h4 26 ♗g2+-) 26 ♚f1! ♗g3+ 27 ♚g2+-.

24 ♗d4 ♗e6

Out of the question is 24 ... ♚xb3? 25 e6!+-.

25 ♖f2 ♖c7

The pawn is poisoned: 25 ... ♚xb3? 26 ♚d3 g6 27 ♗f4 ♚c4 (27 ... ♚c4 28 ♖h2 ♚xd3 29 ♗h6+-) 28 ♚d4 intending ♖h2+.

26 ♖h2 ♚d7!

27 b4

At last White mobilizes his extra pawn but Black is well placed to block it. Another enterprising idea is 27 a4! leaving a3 free for the bishop and supporting the other bishop on b5. For example: 27 ... ♚f8 (27 ... ♚xb3? 28 ♗d3+-; 27 ... ♗b6? 28 ♚xd7 ♗xd4+ 29 ♚xd4 ♖xd7 30 ♖xc2+-) 28 ♚a3 ♚xb3 (28 ... ♚g6 29 ♚d6 ♖c8 30 ♚a6 ♖c6 31 ♗a7+-) 29 ♚xf8

♖c1+ 30 ♖g2 ♖c2+ 31 ♖g3 ♖xh2
32 ♖xg7+-.

27 ... axb4
28 axb4 ♖f8
29 ♖f1?!

In a period of mutual time-trouble White plays a slight inaccuracy. The f-pawn could have been advanced after 29 ♖e2.

29 ... ♖b3
30 ♖d3 ♖c4
31 ♖f5 ♖e7
32 ♖d2 ♖c6!

This clever defensive ploy cuts out White's ambitions of a mate on the h-file. An immediate attempt to make use of the open a-file would be a mistake: 32 ... ♖a7? 33 ♖h3 ♖a2 34 ♖h2 ♖a7+ 35 ♖h1 ♖a1+ 36 ♖xa1 ♖xa1+ 37 ♖g1+-.

33 ♖d4

Now that Black's rook can switch to h6 the plan of doubling on the h-file is ineffective as Black can counter-attack with his queen: 33 ♖h3?! ♖a7+ 34 ♖f2 ♖a2 35 ♖d4 ♖a3 which is unclear according to Kasparov.

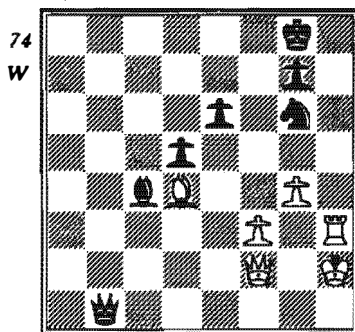
33 ... ♖a6
34 ♖b1 ♖a3
35 ♖h3 ♖b3
36 ♖c2 ♖xb4

Black has little choice but to give up the exchange since if the rook captures on b4 Black suffers a complete disaster: 36 ... ♖xb4? 37 ♖h2 ♖g6 38 ♖h8+! ♖xh8 39 ♖h7+ ♖f8 40 ♖xh8 mate.

37 ♖f2 ♖g6
38 e6?

A more sober choice was the simple 38 ♖xb3 ♖xb3 39 ♖e3 preventing Black's counterplay after the text:

38 ... ♖b1+
39 ♖xb1 ♖xb1+
40 ♖h2 fxe6 (74)



41 ♖b2!

Kasparov forces a queen swap due to the threat against g7. The technical part of the game is very difficult for White as he is unable to create a passed pawn.

41 ... ♖xb2+
42 ♖xb2 ♖f4
43 ♖h4 ♖d3
44 ♖c3 e5

This is necessary since White would otherwise have greater freedom of movement after ♖g3 and f4.

45 ♖g3 d4
46 ♖d2 ♖d5
47 ♖h5 ♖f7
48 ♖a5 ♖e6
49 ♖h8

It is less accurate to attack the e5-pawn: 49 ♖c7?! ♖f6 50

86 Mises Variation: 8 ... ♖b6

♙f5+ ♚e6 51 ♙f8 ♚d7 and White has made no progress. The rest of the game shows White accumulating small advantages by restricting the mobility of the black pieces. It concluded as follows: 49 ... ♖b2 50 ♙e8+ ♚d6 51 ♖b4+ ♚c6 52 ♙c8+ ♚d7 (52 ... ♚b5 53 ♖d6+-) 53 ♙c5 ♚e6 54 ♙c7 g6 55 ♙e7+ ♚f6 56 ♙d7 ♖a2 57 ♙a7 ♖c4 58 ♖a5 ♖d3 59 f4 exf4+ (59 ... e4? 60 ♖b6+-) 60 ♚xf4 ♖c2 61 ♙a6+ ♚f7 62 ♚e5 ♖d3+ 63 ♚xd4 ♖f2 64 g5 ♖f5 65 ♖d2 ♚e7 66 ♚d5 ♖e4 67 ♙a7+ ♚e8 68 ♖e3 ♖c3+ 69 ♚e5 ♚d8 70 ♖b6+ ♚e8 71 ♙c7 ♖e4 72 ♖e3 ♖g3 73 ♖f4 ♖h5 74 ♙a7 ♚f8 75 ♖h2 ♖g7 76 ♖g1 ♖h5 77 ♖c5+ ♚g8 78 ♚d6 ♚f8! 79 ♖d4 ♖g4 80 ♖e5 ♖f5 81 ♙h7 ♚g8 82 ♙c7 ♚f8 83 ♚c6 ♚g8 84 ♙e7 ♚f8 85 ♖d6 ♚g8 86 ♙e8+ ♚f7 87 ♙e7+ ♚g8 88 ♖e5 ♚f8 89 ♙a7 ♖g4 90 ♚d6 ♖h3 91 ♙a3 ♖g4 92 ♙e3 ♖f5 93 ♚c7 ♚f7 94 ♚d8 ♖g4 95 ♖b2 ♖e6 96 ♖c3 ♖f5 97 ♙e7+ ♚f8 98 ♖e5 ♖d3 99 ♙a7 ♖e4 100 ♙c7 ♖b1 101 ♖d6+ ♚g8 102 ♚e7 1-0.

In the next game, Kasparov faced 10 ... ♖b4. The ensuing ending is a good example of how to exploit the doubled c-pawns.

**Kasparov - Piket
Dortmund 1992**

1 e4 e5
2 ♖f3 ♖c6

3 d4 exd4
4 ♖xd4 ♖f6
5 ♖xc6 bxc6
6 e5 ♙e7
7 ♙e2 ♖d5
8 c4 ♖b6
9 ♖d2

White's other moves are not dangerous for Black:

a) 9 ♖c3 and:

a1) 9 ... ♙e6! and:

a11) 10 b3 ♖b4 11 ♖b2 0-0 12 0-0-0 ♙e8 13 ♙c2 ♙xe5 14 ♖d5 (14 ♖d3!?) ♖a3! 15 ♖xa3 cxd5 16 c5 ♙a1+ 17 ♚d2 ♙d4+ 18 ♚c1 ♙a1+ ½-½ Botterill - Corden, Birmingham 1975.

a12) 10 ♙e4 ♖b4 (10 ... ♖a6!?) 11 b3 ♖b4 12 ♖d2 ♖xc3 13 ♖xc3 d5 14 ♙h4 dxc4 15 ♖e2 0-0 16 0-0 ♖d5 17 ♖xc4 ♖xc4 18 ♙xc4 with an edge) 11 ♖d2 0-0 12 ♖d3 f5 13 exf6 ♙xf6 14 0-0-0 ♙xe4 15 ♖xe4 ♖xd2+ 16 ♙xd2± Oll - Rozhdestvensky, Parnu 1982.

a2) 9 ... ♖a6 10 b3 0-0-0 11 ♖b2 g6 12 0-0-0 ♖g7 13 f4 ♙he8 14 ♙f2 ♖b7 15 c5± A. Osborne - Wilcox, Paignton 1987.

b) After 9 b3 g6 (9 ... a5! is met by 10 ♖a3 rather than 10 a4 ♙b4+!) 11 ♖d2 ♙c3 12 ♙b1 ♖b4) White has played:

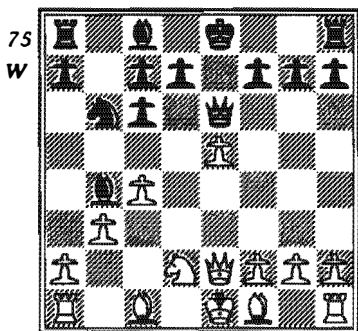
b1) 10 ♖b2 ♖g7 11 ♖d2 0-0 12 0-0-0 d5 with an unclear position, Zhuravlev - Christiansen, Corr 1983.

b2) 10 a4 a5 11 ♖a3 c5 12 ♖c3 ♖g7 13 f4 f6? 14 ♖xc5!± ♙xc5 15 exf6+ ♚f7 16 fxg7 ♚xg7 17 0-0-0 ♖b7 18 ♙e5+ ♙xe5 19 fxg5 ♙ad8 20 ♖b5 ♙he8 21 ♖d3

♙xe5 22 ♖h1 ♗de8 23 ♙xe5
 ♙xe5 24 g3 c5 25 ♗d2 ½-½ van
 der Wiel - Piket, Dutch Ch 1992.

c) 9 ♖f4?! ♗b4+! 10 ♗d1 (10
 ♗c3 ♖a6; 10 ♗d2 ♗xc4 wins a
 pawn) 10 ... ♖a6 11 b3 0-0-0 and
 White is in great difficulties,
 Jouser - Kiprof, Corr 1983.

9 ... ♗e6
 10 b3 ♖b4 (75)



This modern method is regarded as the most positive for Black. However, the older system 10 ... ♖e7 11 ♖b2 0-0 preparing ... d5 is also sound:

a) 12 ♗e4 d5 13 exd6 cxd6 14 ♖d3 d5 (better is 14 ... a5! 15 0-0 ♗xe4 16 ♖xe4 d5 17 cxd5 cxd5 18 ♖d3 a4 with equal chances according to Gligoric) 15 cxd5 cxd5 16 ♗xe6 fxe6 17 0-0 ½-½ Bednarsky - Gligoric, Havana 1967.

b) 12 ♗e3!? d5 13 ♖d3 (13 ♖e2!? ♖b4 14 ♖c3!?) 13 ... ♖b4 14 0-0! ♖xd2 15 ♗xd2 dxc4 16 ♖c2 ♖a6 17 ♖fd1 cxb3 18 axb3 with an unclear position according to Hjartarson, Steingrímsson - Sigfusson, Icelandic Ch 1991.

c) 12 0-0-0 d5! 13 exd6 cxd6

14 ♗f3 (14 ♗xe6 ♖xe6 15 ♖d3-) 14 ... d5 15 ♖d3 ♗h6 16 ♗b1 ♖g5 17 ♖c3 ♖b8 18 ♗al f5 19 ♖h1 ♖f6 20 ♖c2 f4 21 ♖e5 ♖xe5+ 22 ♙xe5 ♗f6 23 ♗h5 h6 24 ♗b1 ♖g4!-+ Thorhallsson - Hjartarson, Icelandic Ch 1991.

11 ♖b2 0-0
 12 0-0-0

White must concentrate on rapid development before he undertakes anything himself. Black met the sluggish 12 a3?! in an energetic manner in Nijboer - Winants, Wijk aan Zee 1992: 12 ... ♖xd2+ 13 ♗xd2 f6! 14 c5 ♗d5 15 0-0-0 fxe5 16 ♖c4 d6 17 g3 ♖f3 18 cxd6 cxd6 19 ♗a5 ♖b7 20 ♗d2 ♗b8 21 ♗b1 a6 22 ♖c1 ♖af8 23 ♗al h6 24 h4 ♗g6 25 h5 ♗f6 26 ♖xd5 cxd5 27 ♗b6 ♖a8 28 ♖c7 d4 29 ♗d7 ♗g5 30 ♖cl ♖xf2! 31 ♗xd6 ♖fl 32 ♖e2 ♖c8 33 ♗d1 ♖xd1 0-1.

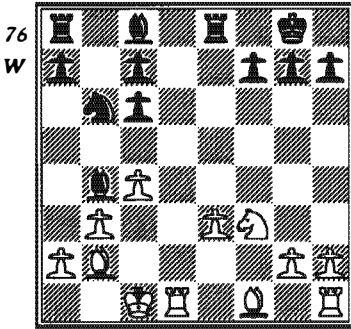
12 ... d5
 13 exd6 ♗xd6
 14 ♗f3

White does not allow ... ♖f5 after which his king would begin to look vulnerable.

14 ... ♗h6+
 15 ♗e3 ♗xe3+
 16 fxe3 ♖e8 (76)

A dynamic endgame (or middlegame without queens!) has arisen. The e-pawn is an obvious target and ... a5-a4 to open the a-file would also be desirable for Black. However, White has the long-term plan of attacking the weak c-pawns, and in the meantime can use

his space advantage to restrict the opponent's pieces.



76 W 17 e4! ♖d7

The weakness of the back rank makes the pawn taboo.

18 e5 a5
 19 ♖d3 ♖c5
 20 ♖c2 a4
 21 ♖d4

In the space of five moves Kasparov has secured a powerful initiative. The e-pawn has been transformed from a potential weakness to a strength and pressure is already being applied to the c-pawns.

21 ... axb3
 22 axb3 ♖a6
 23 h3

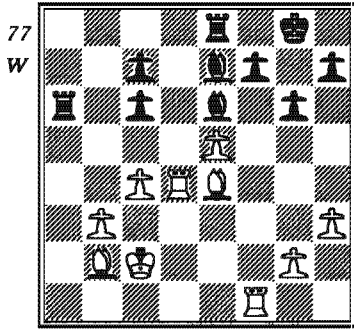
A sly move to prevent the manoeuvre ... ♖g4-h5-g6 which would allow Black to exchange his most ineffectual piece. However, Piket prefers 21 ♖hf1 ♖g4 22 ♖f3±.

23 ... ♖e6
 24 ♖hf1 ♖xd4
 25 ♖xd4 g6

Black is understandably frustrated by the problems

associated with his back rank and aims to rectify the situation. However, the pair of bishops on b2 and c2 ensure that the black king does not find a safe haven.

26 ♖e4 ♖e6
 27 ♖c2 ♖e7 (??)



77 W 28 ♖a1

A systematic campaign is being waged against the doubled c-pawns. Now that their main defender is taken away, the other rook is obliged to take up a passive role since ... c5 would not alleviate Black's problems.

28 ... ♖xa1
 29 ♖xa1 ♖a8
 30 ♖b2 ♖a2
 31 c5

A far-sighted idea to firmly blockade the black c-pawns, since 31 ... ♖xc5 would allow White to create a passed a-pawn after 32 ♖a4, e.g. 32 ... ♖xa4 33 bxa4 ♖d5 34 ♖f3 ♖b6 35 ♖c3 ♖xf3 36 gxf3 c5 37 a5 ♖a7 38 ♖d3 followed by 39 ♖c4 and ♖d2-e3, winning for White.

31 ... ♖a5

32 b4 ♖a6
 33 ♖c3 f6
 34 ♖d1 fxe5
 35 ♖a1 ♖xa1
 36 ♖xa1 ♖f6

Not very enticing is 36 ... ♖d7
 37 ♖xe5 ♖d8 38 ♖b3 intending
 a decisive invasion via a4-a5-
 a6-b7. However, in time-
 trouble, Black fails to spot a
 chance to equalize: 36 ... ♖f5! 37
 ♖xf5 gxf5 38 ♖xe5 ♖d8=.

37 ♖xc6 ♖f5+
 38 ♖b3 ♖f7
 39 b5 ♖e7
 40 ♖c4 ♖e6+
 1-0

Black lost on time, but after
 41 ♖d5 his position would be
 hopeless in any case.

In the Mieses Variation there
 is still great scope for innova-
 tion. In the following game
 White meets 9 ... a5!? (instead
 of 9 ... ♖e6) by the remarkable
 10 h4.

**Shirov - Agdestein
 Oslo 1992**

1 e4 e5
 2 ♘f3 ♘c6
 3 d4 exd4
 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6
 5 ♘xc6 bxc6
 6 e5 ♖e7
 7 ♖e2 ♘d5
 8 c4

Even at this early stage
 White can try 8 h4!? although
 this looks premature after 8 ...

f6!:
 a) 8 ... d6 9 c4 ♘b6 10 exd6
 cxd6 (van der Wiel - van der
 Sterren, Budel 1987) 11 ♖e3±.

b) 8 ... a5 9 c4 ♘b6 10 ♘c3
 ♖e6 11 ♖d2 a4 12 ♖e4 ♖a6 13 b3
 d5 14 exd6 cxd6 15 ♖e3= van
 der Wiel - Wedberg, Stock-
 holm 1987.

c) 8 ... f6! 9 c4 ♖a6 10 ♖h3
 fxe5 11 ♖a3 ♘b4 12 ♘c3 ♖xh4 13
 g3 ♖d4 14 ♖xa6 ♘xa6 15 ♖f4
 (van der Wiel - Timman, Neth-
 erlands 1987) 15 ... ♖c5!±.

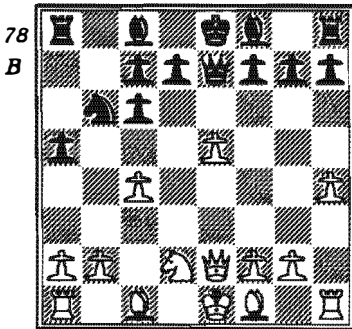
8 ... ♘b6
 9 ♘d2 a5

Black immediately advances
 his a-pawn to meet White's
 intended 10 b3 with ... a4, dis-
 rupting his pawn structure.
 Also worthy of consideration is
 the fianchetto: 9 ... ♖b7 10 b3
 0-0-0 11 ♖b2 c5 (11 ... ♖e6 12
 0-0-0 ♖e7 13 f4 ♖he8 14 ♘f3±
 Padevski - Holmov, Dresden
 1956) 12 0-0-0 d6 13 exd6 ♖xd6
 14 ♖g4+?! (14 g3!? ♖xh1 15 ♖h3+
 ♖b8 16 ♖xh1 and White is
 slightly better according to
 Keene) 14 ... ♖b8 15 ♖e2 h5 16
 ♖f5 ♖h6! 17 ♖f3 ♖c8 18 ♖e4?
 (18 ♖e5!? or 18 ♖c2) 18 ... f5 19
 ♖e3 g5! 20 ♖e5 (20 ♖xh8 ♖xh8
 when the dark squares around
 the white king are too vulner-
 able) 20 ... ♖d6 21 ♖f6 g4 22
 ♖e2 (22 ♖xh6 ♖xh6 23 ♖e2 ♖f4
 and Black is better) 22 ... ♖f4
 23 f3 ♖he8 24 ♖d3 ♖e3 25 ♖c2
 ♖f4 26 ♖c3 ♖f2 27 g3 ♖e5 28
 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 29 ♖xe5 gxf3 30
 ♖hf1 ♖e2 31 ♖f4 0-1 Chandler -

Adams, Hastings 1991/92.

10 h4?! (78)

The idea behind White's unconventional moves is to build up a pawn chain with f4 and g3 without having to worry about the counter-blow ... g5. White reasons that Black's cramped situation will prevent him from being able to undermine the pawns. However, White can also try 10 ♖e4 (10 g3 ♖a6 11 ♖g2 0-0-0 12 b3 f6 13 ♖b2 fxe5 14 0-0! is unclear according to Shirov) 10 ... g6 11 ♖d3 ♖a4 12 ♖b3! (12 0-0?! ♖c5 13 ♖e2 ♖g7 14 ♖f3 ♖e6 15 h4 0-0 16 h5 d6 17 hxg6 hxg6 18 exd6 ♖xd6 19 ♖d1 ♖f4 20 ♖xf4 ♖xf4 21 ♖e4 ♖xe4 22 ♖xe4 ♖b8= Lau - Emms, Copenhagen 1992) 12 ... ♖g7 13 0-0 0-0 14 ♖e1 ♖b7 15 ♖b1 f5 16 exf6 ♖xf6 17 ♖e3 ♖ae8 18 ♖g4 c5 19 ♖xa5 ♖a8 20 ♖e2 d6 21 h4 and Black had insufficient compensation for the pawn: Lau - Emms, Copenhagen rapid play 1992.



10 ... a4!

The normal support of c4 by

b3 is now ruled out.

11 g3 ♖a5!

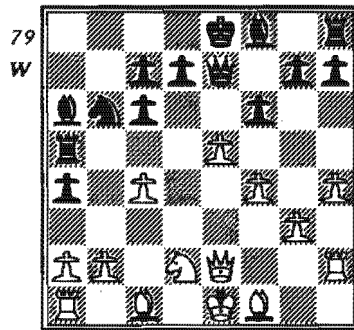
A novel way to activate the rook, adding pressure against e5. Normally, this rook is largely redundant on a8, so this is an interesting venture.

12 f4 ♖a6

13 ♖h2!

As Black has given up the right to castle queenside, White is confident that the rook move will not place the white king in any danger, since Black cannot afford to open up the kingside whilst his own monarch is in the centre. Of course, White can always castle queenside later if necessary.

13 ... f6? (79)



An incautious move, played is the mistaken belief that Black can force the dismantling of White's pawn structure. Agdestein himself suggests 13 ... ♖d8! intending 14 ... f6 as an improvement: 14 ♖d1 f6 15 exf6 ♖xe2+ (15 ... ♖xf6 16 ♖e4 ♖e7 17 ♖c2 with an unclear position; or 15 ... gxf6 16 ♖d3 ♖b4 17 a3 ♖d6 18 ♖c3 ♖c5 19 ♖c2 ♖e6=)

16 ♖xe2 gxf6 17 ♖e3 ♕c5 18 ♖f3
with chances for both sides.

- 14 exf6 gxf6
15 b4!

The latent power of the rook on h2 will be revealed after the queen exchange but in the meantime White tries to trap the loose rook on a5.

- 15 ... axb3

The ending is rather bleak after ... ♖h5 since White controls all the key squares and Black's pawn structure is very weak.

- 16 ♖xb3 ♖a4
17 ♖c5 ♖xe2+

A whole piece is lost after 17 ... ♖a5 18 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 19 c5, with the threat of 20 ♖xe7+ releasing the bishop to take on a6.

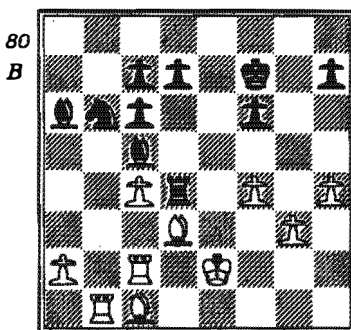
- 18 ♖xe2+ ♖f7
19 ♖xa4 ♖xa4
20 ♖c2

White is the exchange up and should be able to convert it to victory. The pawn on c4 is a slight handicap, but as soon as one of the rooks infiltrates Black's situation will become desperate. Shirov is now prepared to meet 20 ... ♖g8 by 21 ♖f2 ♖c5 22 ♖f3 f5 23 ♕d2 ♖e4 24 ♕e1, when Black's counterplay has dissolved.

- 20 ... ♕c5
21 ♖b1 ♖e8+
22 ♕e2 ♖b6
23 ♖d1 ♖e4
24 ♕d3 ♖d4
25 ♖e2 (80)

The only way to continue the

struggle is to capture the c-pawn; otherwise White will continue with 26 ♕b3 and quickly consolidate his material advantage. However, Shirov suggests that the other capture would have been better: 25 ... ♕xc4! 26 ♕xc4+ ♖xc4 27 ♖b8 when White still has some technical difficulties to overcome.



- 25 ... ♖xc4
26 ♖b8! ♖xd3
27 ♖xd3 ♖e3+
28 ♖c3 d5?!

White should be able to win after 28 ... ♖xc2!? due to the passed a-pawn: 29 ♖xc2 h5 30 f5 ♕e2 31 a4 ♕g4 32 a5 ♕xf5+ 33 ♖c3 ♕e4 34 ♖b7! ♕f2 35 a6 c5 36 ♖xc7 ♖e6 37 a7 and White has a won position according to Tisdall.

- 29 ♕xe3 ♕xe3
30 ♖b4 ♖e7
31 ♖xc6 ♕e2
32 ♖xc7+ ♖d6
33 ♖c3 ♕d2
34 ♖d8+ 1-0

An inventive game by both players.

Conclusion

It is clearly too early to make a definite assessment of the 8 ... ♠b6 variation. However, prac-

tical results have been in White's favour and it would appear that Black has more problems to solve in this line than White.

9 Mieses Variation: 8 ... ♙a6 9 b3

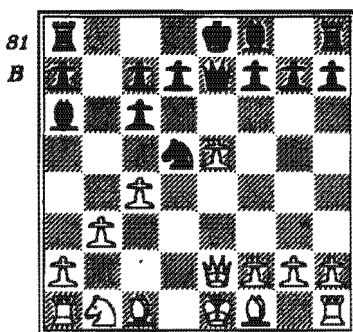
Although 8 ... ♗b6 has been seen in many recent grand-master games, it is still not as popular as 8 ... ♙a6, pinning the white c-pawn and preparing to castle queenside. Of course, this move has the drawback that Black can no longer create early counterplay with ... a5-a4, but it does mean that Black can consider placing his d5-knight on another square. Although 9 ♗d2 has been the traditional response to 8 ... ♙a6, Kasparov has recently popularized 9 b3, which was seen to devastating effect in his crushing victory over Anatoly Karpov at Tilburg in 1991.

ANANYSH I

Kasparov - Karpov Tilburg 1991

- | | | |
|---|---------|------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♗f3 | ♗c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♗xd4 | ♗f6 |
| 5 | ♗xc6 | bxc6 |
| 6 | e5 | ♗e7 |
| 7 | ♗e2 | ♗d5 |
| 8 | c4 | ♙a6 |
| 9 | b3 (8!) | |

This is the move that has



revitalized the Mieses Variation in recent times, largely due to Gary Kasparov's influence.

9 ... g6

Karpov chooses to steer clear of 9 ... 0-0-0, which is examined in the next illustrative game, and 9 ... ♗h4, which is featured in Sax - van der Wiel. If White responds routinely to Black's fianchetto he can easily find himself in difficulties, e.g. 10 ♙b2 ♗g7 11 ♗d2 (11 g3!?) 11 ... ♗b4 (here we see the black knight taking up a more active out post than b6) 12 ♗f3 c5 13 g3 0-0 14 ♗g2 and now:

a) 14 ... ♖ae8 15 0-0 d6 16 ♗e1 ♗d7 17 ♗d2 ♗xe5 18 ♗xe5 ♖xe5 19 a3 ♗c6 20 ♗d3 ♗e7 21 ♗f4 (Hjartarson - Portisch, Reyk-

javik 1991) 21 ... Qb7 22 b4 Qd4 23 Qxb7 c6.

b) 14 ... d5 15 0-0 dxc4 16 bxc4 fad8 17 ffd1 e6 18 Qf1 Qb7 19 Qg5 e5 20 f4 (20 h4!?) 20 ... h6 21 Qf3 g5 Sveshnikov - Kharitonov, St. Petersburg 1991.

10 f4!

Kasparov is well prepared and immediately reveals his novelty. This supports the e5-pawn and can itself be supported by g3.

10 ... f6

An instant attempt to undermine the advanced pawn. In a later game Karpov chose a more sedate path: 10 ... e4+ 11 Qd2 e6 12 Qc3 Qb4 13 e3 Qxc3 14 Qxc3 Qb7 15 0-0-0 c5 16 e3 Qxc3 17 e3 0-0-0 18 h4 fhe8 19 fh3 d6 20 fhd3 dxe5 21 e5 e6 22 fhd8+ fhd8 23 fhd8+ Qxd8 24 Qd2 1/2-1/2 Gelfand - Karpov, Linares 1992.

11 Qa3! e7!

The alternatives leave Black in an awkward situation.

a) 11 ... c5!? and now:

a1) 12 Qb2 Qxf4 (12 ... Qg7!?) 13 e4+-.

a2) 12 g3 fxe5 13 Qg2 and now:

a21) 13 ... c6 14 fxe5 Qg7 15 Qb2 0-0 16 Qd2 intending Qf3, when Kasparov considers the position to be slightly better for White.

a22) 13 ... e4 14 Qb2 (14 e4 e4+ 15 Qxe4 Qg7 with an

unclear position) 14 ... Qg7 15 Qxg7 e7 16 e4+ f8 17 e5 e8+ 18 f2 e1+-.

b) 11 ... e4 12 Qb2 fxe5 13 a3 Qd5 14 e5 Qf6 15 Qe2 Qg7 16 Qd2 d6 17 e7+ e7 18 Qf3±.

12 e2

In his analysis of the game (upon which these notes are based), Kasparov demonstrates that forcing Black to forfeit the right to castle is not good enough for an advantage: 12 e6+ f8 13 e2 e6 14 Qb2 e6+ 15 Qe2 Qb4 16 Qc3 e8 17 0-0-0 Qxc3 18 Qxc3 e2 (18 ... Qxc3 19 e3 e2 20 fhe1 e4 21 e6+-) 19 cxd5-.

12 ... e6

The forcing 12 ... e3 13 cxd5 Qxf1 14 e3 Qa6 (14 ... e7 15 Qc2) favours White:

a) 15 dxc6 dxc6 16 0-0±.

b) 15 e5! and:

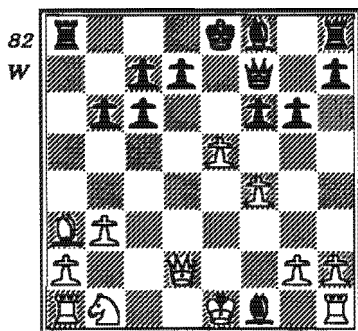
b1) 15 ... e5 16 e6 e4+ 17 Qd1 e4+ 18 Qc2 e2+ 19 Qc3+-.

b2) 15 ... Qb7 16 e7 e5 17 e7 e4+ 18 Qd1 e4+ 19 Qc2 e2+ (19 ... e4+ 20 Qb2 e4+ 21 Qb1) 20 Qc3 e3+ 21 Qb2 e4+ 22 Qb1 and White is winning according to Speelman.

13 c5 Qxf1

14 cxb6 axb6? (82)

Even at this early stage Black has to play extremely accurately to survive. Karpov was obviously relying on the variation 15 Qxf8 Qxg2! 16 e2 Qxf8 17 Qc3 fxe5 18 fxe5 e4 with an unclear position. How-



ever, he had two alternatives, one good and one bad:

a) 14 ... ♖a6! 15 bxc7 fxe5! 16 ♖e5 ♖xf4! 17 ♖xa6 ♖h4+ 18 ♖d1 (18 g3 ♖e4+ 19 ♖f2? ♖xa3) 18 ... ♖d4+ 19 ♖c2 (19 ♖d2 ♖xa3 20 c8(♖)+ ♖xc8 21 ♖xc8+ ♖e7 22 ♖xh8 ♖xa1+ 23 ♖e2 ♖xh1 24 ♖xe5+ ♖f7 25 ♖f4+ which is equal according to Kasparov) 19 ... ♖e4+ and now:

✓ a1) 20 ♖c3 ♖d4+ 21 ♖c2 ♖e4+-.

✓ a2) 20 ♖b2 ♖xg2+.

✓ a3) 20 ♖c1 and:

a31) 20 ... ♖h6+? ♖e3+! 21 ♖d2 and now:

✓ a311) 21 ... ♖xd2+ 22 ♖xd2 ♖f4+ 23 ♖e1 ♖h4+ (23 ... ♖e3+ 24 ♖e2 ♖c3+ 25 ♖f2) 24 g3 ♖e4+ 25 ♖d2+-.

✓ a312) 21 ... ♖d4 22 ♖b1! ♖xd2 23 c8(♖)+ (23 ♖f1 ♖f4) 23 ... ♖xc8 24 ♖xc8+ ♖f7 25 ♖a6 ♖e4+ 26 ♖b2 ♖d4+ 27 ♖c2 ♖c3+ 28 ♖b1+-.

a32) 20 ... ♖e3+! 21 ♖d2? ♖xa3+ 22 ♖xa3 ♖c3+!+-.

a4) 20 ♖d3 ♖xg2+ 21 ♖d2 ♖xa3 22 ♖h1 0-0 23 ♖xd7 (23 ♖xe5 d6) 23 ... ♖d5 24 ♖xd5+

(24 ♖g4 ♖d6) 24 ... cxd5 25 ♖xe5 ♖ac8 26 ♖xd5 ♖xc7+ 27 ♖c4 ♖b4 and Black is slightly better according to Speelman.

b) 14 ... ♖xa3? 15 b7 ♖b8 16 ♖xa3 ♖a6 17 0-0-0! ♖xb7! (17 ... ♖xb7? 18 e6!) 18 ♖h1 0-0 19 ♖xd7 and Kasparov considers the position to be clearly better for White.

15 e6!!

A powerful intermezzo which places the black position on the brink of collapse. Obviously after 15 ... ♖xe6+ 16 ♖xf1 ♖xa3 17 ♖xa3 ♖xa3 18 ♖e1 the black queen leaves the board.

15 ... dxe6

16 ♖xf8 ♖d8

17 ♖b2 ♖xg2

Black could also retain the bishop in order to highlight the exposed position of the white king after an eventual ... g5:

a) 17 ... ♖d3! 18 ♖a3 g5! 19 ♖d2 gxf4 20 0-0-0 c5 21 ♖c3±.

b) 17 ... ♖a6 18 ♖b4! c5 19 ♖c3 0-0 20 ♖d2 intending 0-0-0, when White is again slightly better according to Kasparov.

18 ♖xg2 ♖xf8

The difference between Karpov's intended variation after 15 ♖xf8 and the game position is now clear. Since the c6-pawn is unprotected Black will only have two pawns for the piece and the white king in the centre is not a problem since the black pieces are restricted by their own pawns.

19 ♖xc6 ♖d6

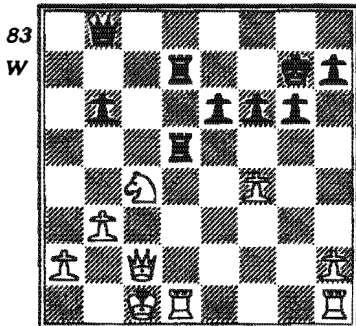
- 20 ♜c3 ♝g7
 21 ♘d2 ♞hd8
 22 0-0-0 ♜e8?

Black threatens to win the queen with 23 ... ♞c6, but a much better move was 22 ... ♞d5! with the same idea. Instead, after 22 ... ♜d7 23 ♜c2 ♞c6 24 ♘c4 ♜c8 25 a4 or 23 ... b5 25 ♘e4 White would have few problems.

- 23 ♜xc7+! ♞8d7

Stealing the c-pawn seems risky as it opens up the c-file but White has it all under control. The point is that 23 ... ♝g8 fails to 24 ♘c4 exchanging rooks.

- 24 ♜c2 ♜b8
 25 ♘c4 ♞d5 (83)



There is no way out either after 25 ... ♞xd1+ 26 ♞xd1 ♜xf4+ 27 ♝b1 ♞xd1+ 28 ♜xd1 ♜xh2 29 ♜d7+ ♝h6 30 a4!+- (Kasparov).

- 26 ♜f2!

Although White has a material plus there is still some way to go before this can be converted into a victory. First he must restrict Black's counterplay, before advancing his

queenside pawns or marching in with his king. The knight on c4 has a vital role as it safeguards White's king, freeing his other pieces for more active duties.

- 26 ... ♜c7
 27 ♜xb6 ♜xf4+
 28 ♜e3 ♜g4

Obviously Black cannot afford to exchange queens as White could then simply advance his queenside pawns.

- 29 ♞dg1 ♜h4
 30 ♞g3 e5
 31 ♞h3 ♜g4
 32 ♞g1

White has marshalled his forces with great care. The only way Black can make progress is to advance his passed pawns but then White would be ideally placed to exploit the exposed position of the king.

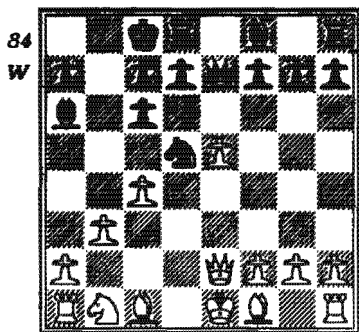
- 32 ... ♞d1+
 33 ♞xd1 ♜xd1+
 34 ♝b2 h5
 35 ♞g3 ♜h1
 36 ♜f2 h4
 37 ♜g2 ♜xg2+
 38 ♞xg2 g5
 39 a4 ♝g6
 40 a5 e4
 41 b4 h3
 42 ♞g3 ♞h7
 43 a6 f5
 44 ♞a3 1-0

Prior to the Tilburg encounter Kasparov and Karpov had already contested this variation in the fourteenth

game of their 1990 World Championship match. On that occasion Karpov choose 9 ... 0-0-0 and, after a fascinating struggle, the game was drawn.

**Kasparov - Karpov
World Championship
Lyon (14) 1990**

- | | | |
|---|------|------------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♟f3 | ♞c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♟xd4 | ♟f6 |
| 5 | ♟xc6 | bxc6 |
| 6 | e5 | ♞e7 |
| 7 | ♞e2 | ♟d5 |
| 8 | c4 | ♖a6 |
| 9 | b3 | 0-0-0 (84) |



10 g3

This is Kasparov's innovation, a gambit idea which has breathed new life into the Mieses Variation. Breaking the pin immediately with 10 ♞b2!? promises little; Ljubojevic - Seirawan, Wijk aan Zee 1988, continued 10 ... ♟b6 11 ♖e2 ♞e8 12 ♟f4 g5 13 ♖g3 ♖g7 14 ♟c3 f5 15 f4 gxf4 16 ♟xf4 ♖xe5 17 ♖xe5 ♞xe5 18 0-0. Also harmless is

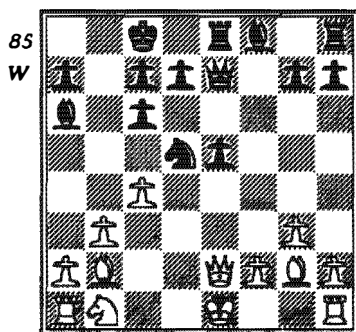
10 ♖b2 f6! =.

10 ... ♞e8

Not so good is 10 ... g5?! 11 ♖a3 when White is better.

11 ♖b2 f6

12 ♖g2 fxe5 (85)



13 0-0

White's compensation for the pawn lies in the weaknesses in Black's pawn structure and the sorry-looking black bishop on a6. One of Kasparov's team of analysts, Azmaiparashvili, has suggested that White can improve at this point with 13 ♟d2!?, a move which has been successfully tested: 13 ... g6 14 0-0-0 ♖h6!? (14 ... ♖g7 15 ♟e4, intending ♞d2-a5±) 15 ♞b1 ♞hf8 16 ♟e4 ♞b8?! 17 ♞e1! ♟f6 18 ♟xf6 ♞xf6 19 f4 ♞f7 20 ♞a5 ♖b7 21 ♖xe5± Thorhallsson - Stefansson, Iceland 1991.

13 ... h5!

Not content with a passive stance, Black goes on the offensive.

14 ♞d2

The right response; on 14 ♟d2? h4 15 ♞fe1 hxg3 16 hxg3 ♞g5 17 ♟f3 ♞h5 Black has the

brighter prospects due to his pressure on the h-file.

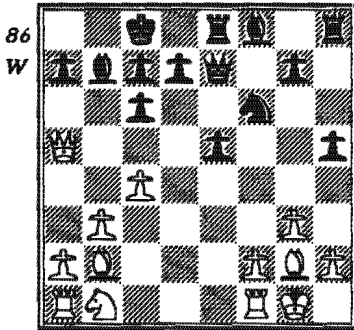
14 ... ♖f6

15 ♗a5

A powerful riposte. Now the pawn is regained and White begins to make inroads into the black king position.

15 ... ♚b7 (86)

If 15 ... ♖b7 16 ♚a3 ♗e6 17 ♖c3, intending ♖xf8 and ♖a4, leaves Black in dire straits.



16 ♚a3!

A necessary precautionary measure as after 16 ♗xa7?! ♗c5! 17 ♗a4 (17 ♗xc5 ♖xc5 with the idea of ... h4) 17 ... ♗b6 and ... ♖c5 Black has excellent chances.

16 ... ♗e6

17 ♖xf8 ♜hxf8

White can consider a rapid queenside pawn storm after 17 ... ♜xf8? 18 ♗xa7 h4 19 a4! hxg3 20 a5 ♜xh2 21 a6+-.

18 ♗xa7 ♗g4!

A marvellous move to counter White's fearsome but rather slow attack. Left to his own devices Kasparov can play a4-a5-a6 or ♖a3-c2-b4-a6, so

Black must play actively. The text simultaneously prepares ... ♗d4 to exchange queens and supports the advance of the h-pawn to h3, where it smother the white kingside.

19 ♖a3 h4

The offer to trade queens is wisely delayed, since the white knight would become too powerful after 19 ... ♗d4 20 c5 ♗b4 (otherwise ♖c4-a5 is too strong) 21 ♖c4 ♗b5 22 ♜fe1, when the e5-pawn is under fire and White can follow up with ♖f1. After 19 ... h4, however, 20 c5 hxg3 21 hxg3 ♗h5 leaves Black in the ascendancy.

20 ♖c2 h3

21 ♖h1 ♖e4

22 a4!

The attempt to win the piece meets with an amusing finale: 22 f3? ♖xg3 23 fxg4 ♖e2 mate. In this incredibly complicated position Kasparov finds the only move to deny Black an advantage:

a) 22 ♖e3 ♗g6?

b) 22 ♖b4 ♖c3 23 ♜ael ♗d4?

c) 22 ♗e3 ♖g5?

22 ... ♖c3

23 ♜ael?!

Kasparov should have given his king an escape square, but not with 23 f3? ♖e2+ (23 ... c5? 24 ♗xb7+!) 24 ♜f2 ♗g6?. Of course, a stronger continuation is 23 ♜fe1! ♖e2+ 24 ♜f1 ♖d4 25 ♖xd4 ♗xd4 26 ♗xd4 exd4 27 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 28 ♜e1 ♜f8 29 f4!

g5 30 ♖f2! gx4 31 g4 f3 32 c5 when White is slightly better according to Azmaiparashvili, but Kasparov was probably worried about the vulnerability of his f2-square.

- 23 ... ♗e2+
 24 ♖xe2 ♗xe2
 25 ♗b4 d5!?

A risky attempt to open up the position. Black was not content with the forcing variation 25 ... ♖f3 26 ♗a6 ♖d8 27 ♗b8+ ♖e7 28 ♗xb7 ♖xf2 29 ♗b4+ d6 30 ♖xf2 ♗d1+ with a draw by perpetual check. Less enticing is 25 ... e4? 26 ♗a6 ♖d8 27 ♗xb7 ♖xf2 28 ♗xc7+ ♖e7 29 ♗e5+ ♖d8 30 ♗a5+ ♖e7 31 ♗g5+ ♖e6 32 ♗c7+-.

- 26 cxd5 cxd5
 27 ♖xd5

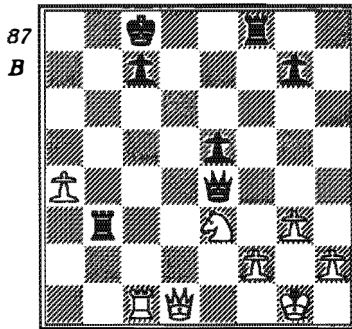
The other capture leads nowhere: 27 ♗xd5?! ♗a6 28 ♗c5 ♗d6 and White's attack peters out. A more searching test is 27 ♖c1! ♗d2 (27 ... ♖d8? 28 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 29 ♗xd5 ♖f7 30 ♗b6+-) 28 ♗c5 ♖e7 (28 ... ♖f7!?)±, e.g. 29 ♗xd5 ♖xd5 30 ♖xd5 ♖xf2 31 ♖e6+ ♖d8 32 ♖xh3 ♖xh2 33 ♖c2 ♗xc2 34 ♗d5+ and mate follows.

- 27 ... ♖xd5
 28 ♗xd5 ♗c2
 29 ♗a6+ ♖d7
 30 ♗e3 ♗e4
 31 ♖c1?!

White is on the point of consolidating his position. At the moment he has a pawn for the sacrificed exchange, and

has targets at c7, e5 and h3. However, a more accurate choice was 31 ♖d1+ ♖e7 32 ♗f1 ♖d8 33 ♖el± ♖d3 34 ♗c4?? (34 ♗g4!) 34 ... ♖xg3+ 35 hxg3 h2+ 36 ♖xh2 ♖h8+ 37 ♖g1 ♖h1 mate.

- 31 ... ♖b8!
 32 ♗f1 ♖xb3
 33 ♗xh3+ ♖d8
 34 ♗h5 ♖c8
 35 ♗d1 (87)



- 35 ... ♖xe3

In mutual time-trouble, Karpov settles for a draw. Hopeless is 35 ... ♖b2? 36 ♗c4 and the dual threat against the rook and the brutal check on d6 wins.

- 36 fxe3 ♗xe3+
 37 ♖h1 ♗e4+
 38 ♖g1 ♗e3+
 39 ♖h1 ♗e4+
 40 ♖g1 ♖d8
 41 ♗c2 ♖-♖

One of the most enterprising lines against Kasparov's 9 b3 is 9 ... ♗h4. This early queen sortie leads to great complications.

**Sax - van der Wiel
Wijk aan Zee 1992**

1	e4	e5
2	♟f3	♞c6
3	d4	exd4
4	♞xd4	♟f6
5	♞xc6	bxc6
6	e5	♟e7
7	♟e2	♞d5
8	c4	Qa6
9	b3	♟h4

A tricky reply for White to meet as Black threatens both 10 ... ♟b4+ and ... ♟d4. Although rarely seen in tournament play, White needs to be properly prepared to meet this move, as it will no doubt become very fashionable if the evidence of the stem game is anything to go by.

10 a3

This is considered by van der Wiel to be the only feasible move, but 10 ♟b2 has also been played:

a) 10 ... ♟b4+ and now:

a1) 11 ♞d1 ♟f4 12 ♟e3 ♟e6 13 g3 ♟g4+ 14 ♞e2 ♟h3? Gufeld - Vistanetskis, USSR 1956.

a2) 11 ♞d2 0-0 12 ♟f3!? (12 g3!?) 12 ... ♞xd2+ 13 ♞xd2 ♟g5+ 14 ♞d1 ♟b6 15 ♞d3 ♞ad8 16 ♟h3 g6 17 ♞c2 d5 18 exd6 ♞c8 (A. Osborne - C. M. Brown, Torquay 1987) 19 ♟g3! ♟xg3 20 hxg3 cxd6 21 ♞xh7! ♞xh7 22 ♞h1+ ♟g8 23 ♞h8 mate.

b) 10 ... ♞c5 11 g3 ♟g5 12 ♞d2 ♟b6 13 ♞g2 0-0 14 0-0 ♞fe8 15 ♟e4 ♟e7 16 ♟g4 ♞h8 17 e6 f6 18

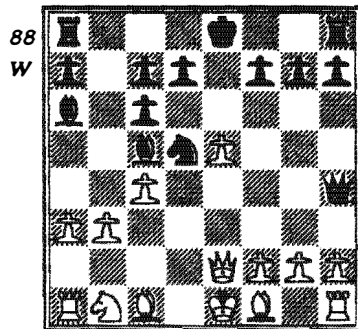
♞xc5 ♟xc5 19 exd7 ♞e7 20 ♞ad1 ♞d8 21 ♞fel ♟b7 22 ♞d4 ♟b4 23 ♞c3 ♞xel+ 24 ♞xel ♟f8 25 ♟b4 ♟g8 26 ♞e7 1-0 S. Arkell - Chukhrova, Cappelle la Grande 1992.

10 ... ♞c5 (88)

A sharp line which leads to incredible complications. The relatively tame 10 ... ♟f4 should not cause White any problems after 11 ♟e4 ♞g6 12 ♟e3 c5 and now:

a) 13 ♞c3 ♟d4 14 ♟xd4 cxd4 15 ♟b5 ♞xb5 16 cxb5 ♞xe5 17 ♟b3 0-0-0 18 ♞xd4 ♞e8 19 ♞d2 ♞b8 20 f4 ♞g6 21 g3 ♟e7 22 ♞el f6 24 b4± Karasev - Nasibullin, Novosibirsk 1989.

b) 13 g3 ♟d4 14 ♟xd4 cxd4 15 f4 ♟b7 16 ♞g1 d6 17 exd6 ♞xd6 18 ♞d3 a5 19 ♞f2 0-0 20 ♞el ♞fd8 21 ♞d2 ♟f8 22 ♞b1 ♟e6 23 b4 axb4 24 axb4 ♞a2 25 c5 ♞f8 26 ♞c4 ♞c2 27 ♟b3 ♞c8 28 ♟e4 ♞xe4 29 ♞xe4 d3 30 ♞d2 ♞c2 31 ♞el ♞d4 32 ♞xd4 ♞xd4 33 ♞xc3 dxc2 34 ♞cl+- Karasev - Aleksandrov, Podolsk 1990.



88
w

11 ♟b2

If White attempts to chase

the queen away with 11 g3 then Black has a spectacular sacrifice, 11 ... Qxf2+, and now:

a) 12 Qxf2? Bb4+ 13 Bf3 Bxa1 14 Bc2 (14 Bb4 Bb8!?) 14 ... Bxe5 15 cxd5 Bxd5+ 16 Bb4+ Bxe4+ 17 Bxe4 Qxf1 18 Bxf1 0-0.

b) 12 Bxf2 Bb4+ 13 Bd1! (13 Bd2 Bxh1 14 Qg2 Bxh2 15 cxd5 cxd5 16 Qc3 c6 [16 ... d4!? intending 17 Qd5 Qb7] 17 Qb2 Bh6+ 18 Bf4 with an unclear position) 13 ... Bxh1 14 Qd2 Qc3+ (14 ... 0-0 15 Qc2! f6 16 e6 dxe6 17 Qb2 intending 18 cxd5) 15 Qc2 Qe4 16 Qxe4 Bxe4+ 17 Qd3 Bg4 (17 ... Bxe5 18 Qb2 Bg5 19 h4 Bh6 20 Bf1+ Qf8 21 Bf1) 18 Qf5 Bh5 19 h4! f6 20 exf6 gxf6 21 Bb1+! which Gutman indicates as clearly better for White.

Another interesting idea is 11 Bf3 Qd4 12 Bb2 Qb6 13 Qd3 0-0-0 14 Bb2= Thorhallsson - Jonsson, Hafnarfirdi 1992.

11 ... Qf4

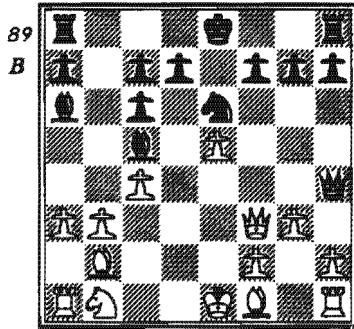
In his analysis to the game - (upon which these notes are based) van der Wiel shows that the ambitious 11 ... Qe3!? does nothing to resolve the complications after 12 g3! Bb4 13 fxe3 Bxh1 14 Qc3 (intending 15 0-0-0 or 15 Qd2) 14 ... Bb8 15 b4 Bg1 (15 ... Qxe3?! 16 Bxe3 Qxc4 17 0-0-0 Qxf1 18 Bf2+; 15 ... Qxc4!? 16 Bxc4 Qxe3 17 Bb2 Bg1 with an unclear position) 16 bxc5 Qxc4 17 Bxc4 Bxb2 18 0-0-0 Bxh2=.

12 Bf3!?

It might be more accurate to cover e4 from another angle: 12 Bc2 (12 Bb2? Qh3! 13 gxf3 Bxe4+) 12 ... Bg4 13 f3 Bg6 14 Bb2 Bh6 15 Qc1 (15 g3?! Qe3! 16 Ba5 Qe6 17 Bxa6 Qc1 with an unclear position) 15 ... g5 16 Qc3, which is unclear according to van der Wiel.

12 ... Qe6
13 g3 (89)

White had been waiting to play this for the last five moves and takes the first opportunity to do so. Also worth considering is the risky 13 Qd3 Qd4 14 Qd1 Qxb3 15 Bxb3 Bxf2+ 16 Qd1 with an unclear position.



13 ... Bh6!

This maintains the momentum by keeping active in order to exploit White's lack of development. Black also has two other interesting possibilities:

- a) 13 ... Qg5 14 Bg2 Bb4+ 15 Bxe4 Qxe4 16 f4! Qf2 17 b4 Qe3 18 Qe2 Qb6 19 Qe1 Qe3 (19 ... Qxh1 20 c5) 20 Qe2=.
- b) 13 ... Bb7 14 Qd2 0-0-0!?

15 b4 Qd4 16 Qxd4? Qxd4 17
 ♖e4 Qc2+-+ A. Gomez - L.
 Valdes, Cuba 1991

14 Qd2 ♖b8
 15 ♖d3?

A more precise continuation
 is the immediate 15 b4! Qd4?!
 (15 ... 0-0!) 16 Qxd4 Qxd4 17
 ♖d3 c5 18 Qg2±.

15 ... 0-0
 16 Qg2 ♖fd8
 17 b4 d6

The drawback of White's
 fifteenth move, voluntarily
 placing his queen on the d-file,
 is now apparent. Black gains a
 tempo due to the discovered
 attack, as White must sidestep
 with his queen. For example: 18
 Qxc6? dxe5 19 ♖e2 (19 ♖c2
 Qxf2+-+) 19 ... Qd4-+.

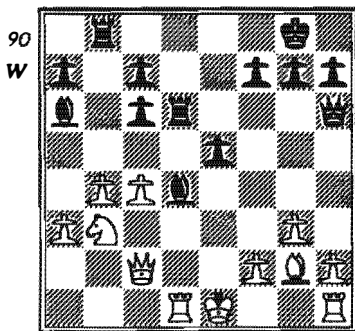
18 ♖c2 Qd4?

This gives White a chance to
 get back into the game. It is
 better to play 18 ... Qd4 when
 White is forced to enter a
 series of exchanges which are
 in Black's favour: 19 exd6 (19
 Qxc6 dxe5) 19 ... ♖xd6 20 Qe4
 Qxb2 21 ♖xb2 ♖d4 22 0-0 (22
 Qc5 ♖f6!) 22 ... Qxc4.

19 Qxd4!

White sensibly gives up a
 pawn rather than face the
 Black attack which would
 follow after 19 ♖c3 ♖h5! 20
 Qf3 (20 ♖f1 ♖e2+ 21 ♖g1
 ♖b5!-+) 20 ... dxe5 21 bxc5 ♖b3
 winning.

19 ... Qxd4
 20 ♖d1 dxe5
 21 Qb3 ♖d6 (90)



22 0-0

White is counting on the
 weakness of the double c-
 pawns and the immobility of
 Black's light-squared bishop to
 provide compensation for the
 pawn.

22 ... ♖bd8
 23 ♖fe1 ♖f6

An accurate move which
 highlights the weakness of the
 pawn on f2. If 23 ... Qxc4 24
 Qxd4! (24 ♖xc4 Qxf2+ 25 ♖xf2
 ♖xd1 26 ♖xd1 ♖xd1 27 ♖xc6
 ♖xc6 28 Qxc6 ♖d3) 24 ...
 ♖xd4 25 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 26 ♖xe5
 and White emerges with an
 equal game.

24 ♖d2 g6
 25 c5 ♖e6
 26 ♖ed1 ♖g7
 27 a4 h5
 28 h4 Qc8
 29 Qxd4?!

White misses a golden
 opportunity to restore the
 balance: 29 Qh3! ♖e7 30 Qxc8
 ♖xc8 31 Qxd4 exd4 32 ♖xd4=.

29 ... ♖xd4
 30 ♖xd4 exd4
 31 ♖c4 ♖e5?!

In mutual time-trouble both players begin to make errors. Black could have preserved an edge after 31 ... $\underline{Re8}$ intending 32 ... $\underline{Rd8}$.

32 $\underline{Wxd4}$?

Now White overlooks a way of safeguarding the f-pawn and winning the black d-pawn: 32 f4! $\underline{Re3}$ 33 $\underline{Ch2}$ and 34 $\underline{Wxd4}$.

32 ... $\underline{Re1+}$

33 $\underline{Ch2}$ $\underline{Wxd1}$

34 $\underline{Wxd1}$ $\underline{Wb2}$

Amazingly, Black fails to notice that the f2-pawn can be captured. After 34 ... $\underline{Wf2}$ 35 $\underline{Wa1+}$ $\underline{Cb7}$ (35 ... $\underline{Wf6}$ 36 $\underline{Wd1}$; 35

... f6?! 36 $\underline{Wd1}$ with the initiative) 36 $\underline{We5}$ $\underline{Qe6}$ 37 $\underline{Ch1}$ Black retains an advantage.

35 $\underline{We1}$ $\underline{Qd7}$
 ~~$\underline{Wb2}$~~

Conclusion

Kasparov's 9 b3 in the main line of the Mieses Variation has proved to be a very dangerous weapon. Clearly Black has problems to solve after both 9 ... g6 and 9 ... 0-0-0, but the counter-attacking 9 ... $\underline{Wh4}$ leads to highly complex positions.

10 Mieses Variation:

8 ... ♚a6 9 ♖d2

The variation with 9 ♖d2 is a flexible choice that for a long time was considered the main line, but has been rather eclipsed in recent years by Kasparov's devotion to 9 b3. However, it is not necessarily inferior; Grandmasters Timman and Sveshnikov have both experimented with it and practical results have been very encouraging.

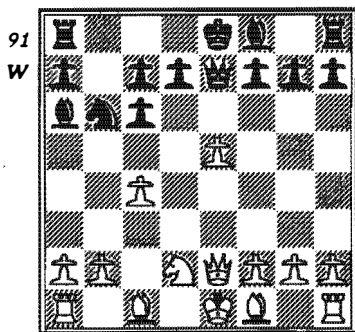
Harding - Zhvidov Corr 1976

1	e4	e5
2	♖f3	♗c6
3	d4	exd4
4	♗xd4	♗f6
5	♗xc6	bxc6
6	e5	♗e7
7	♗e2	♗d5
8	c4	♚a6
9	♖d2	

We now arrive at a critical juncture; Black has several playable alternatives but it is not firmly established which is most promising. White's task is made easier by the similarity of each variation, but he must always be on the look-out for a

sudden tactical opportunity.

9 ... ♗b6 (91)



The main alternatives are 9 ... g6, considered in Sveshnikov - Schüssler, 9 ... 0-0-0 in Timman - Karpov, and 9 ... ♗b4 in Oll - Kalinin, though Black has also tried:

a) 9 ... f6 and now:

a1) 10 exf6! ♗xf6 11 b3 c5?! (11 ... ♗xe2+!?) 12 ♚b2 ♚b7 13 f3 ♗f7 14 0-0-0 ♗xe2 15 ♗xe2 ♗d6 16 g3 ♗ae8 17 ♖he1 ♖e7 (17 ... ♖e3?! 18 ♗e4 ♗xe4 19 fxe4 ♖xe4 20 ♗h5+ ♗f8 21 ♖xe4 ♗xe4 22 ♖f1+ ♗f6 23 ♗xf6 gxf6 24 ♖xf6+ ♗e7 25 ♖f7+♗) 18 ♗d3 ♖he8 19 ♖xe7+ ♗xe7 20 ♖e1 g6 21 ♗d1 gives White a small edge, Sveshnikov - Tarjan, Hastings 1977/78.

a2) 10 ♗f3!? ♗b4+ 11 ♗d1

♗e7? 12 ♜c2! ♘b6 13 a3 ♜a5 14 ♘d2 ♜c5 15 ♖b4 1-0 Asaturin - Marzell, Corr 1978.

b) 9 ... ♘f4 10 ♜e4 ♘g6 11 f4 0-0-0 and now:

b1) 12 g3 d5?! (12 ... f6!?) 13 cxd5 ♘xf1 14 d6! ♜d7 15 dxc7 ♜xc7 16 ♜xf1 ♜h3+ 17 ♜e2 ♖d5 18 ♘b3 ♜g4+ 19 ♜f3 ♘xe5 20 fxe5 ♜c4+ 21 ♘f2 ♘c5+ 22 ♘xc5 ♜xc5+ 23 ♜g2+- Alburt - Radashkovich, USSR 1970.

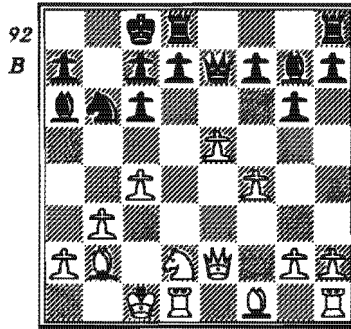
b2) 12 b3 f6 (12 ... ♖b7!? 13 ♖b2 c5 14 ♜e3 ♜h4+ 15 g3 ♜h6 16 ♖g1 d6 17 exd6 ♘xd6 18 0-0-0 ♜xh2 with an unclear position Tompa - Mestrovic, Corr 1980) 13 ♖b2 ♖e8 (or 13 ... fxe5 14 fxe5 ♜g5 15 0-0-0 ♖e8 16 h4 ♜f4 17 ♜xf4 ♘xf4 18 g3 ♘h5 19 ♘e4± Chumak - Gostkhorzhevich, Yurmala 1976) 14 0-0-0 fxe5 15 f5 ♘f4 16 ♘f3 d6 17 c5! ♖b7 18 ♜a4 ♜b8 19 g3 ♘d5 20 ♖xd5 cxd5 21 c6 ♘c8 22 ♖a6 ♜a8 23 ♘d4!+- Kozlov - Suleimanov, Erevan 1969.

10 b3 g6

The aggressive-looking 10 ... d5?! merely leads to a favourable ending for White: 11 exd6 cxd6 12 ♖b2 f6 13 0-0-0 ♜xe2 14 ♘xe2 ♜f7 15 ♖he1 d5 16 cxd5 ♘xe2 17 ♖xe2 cxd5 18 ♘f3 ♖b4 19 ♘d4 ♖he8 20 ♖c2± Schmidt - Radovici, Tel Aviv Ol 1964.

- 11 ♖b2 ♘g7
- 12 0-0-0 0-0-0
- 13 f4 (92)
- 13 ... d5!?

A suggestion of Evans's, this aims to exploit White's relative



lack of development by opening up the position. The major alternative, 13 ... ♖he8, is rather slow and leaves Black with a dour defensive task. After 14 ♜f2 Black may continue:

a) 14 ... d6 15 c5! ♘xf1 16 ♜xf1 dxc5 17 ♜a6+ ♜b8 18 ♘c4 ♘xc4 19 bxc4 ♜e6 20 ♘c3 ♜a8 21 ♖a5 ♖b8 22 ♖d2 ♖b7 23 ♖b2 ♖xb2 24 ♜xb2 f6 (24 ... ♖b8+ 25 ♜a3 ♜d7 26 ♖c1 ♜c8 27 ♜xc8 ♖xc8 28 ♖d1+-) 25 ♜a3 fxe5 26 ♖d1! exf4 (26 ... ♖b8 27 ♘xc7 ♜c8 28 ♜xc6+ ♜b7 29 ♖b1 ♜xc6 30 ♖xb8 mate) 27 ♘xc7 ♜e3+ 28 ♜a4 ♜e4 29 ♖d3 ♜xg2 30 a3 ♖b8 31 ♖b3 ♖b4+ 32 ♖xb4 1-0 Pinkas - Ploch, Polish Ch 1973.

b) 14 ... ♖b7 (a suggestion of Keres's) 15 c5 ♘d5 16 ♘e4 f6? (16 ... ♜b8 17 ♘c4±) 17 ♘d6+ cxd6 18 cxd6 ♜e6 19 ♜xa7 ♘b4 20 ♖d4 ♘xa2+ 21 ♜xa2 ♜b8 22 ♜a5 ♜xb3 23 ♖b4 ♜e3+ 24 ♜b1+- Botterill - Holmes, Corr 1989.

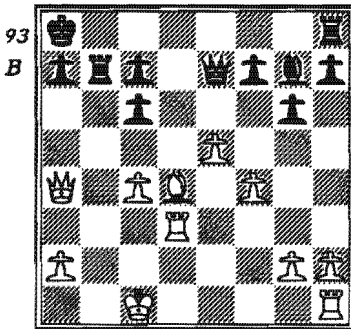
- 14 ♜e3! dxc4
- 15 ♘xc4 ♘xc4

If 15 ... ♘xc4? then 16 ♜xa7 wins immediately.

- 16 ♖xc4 ♖xc4
 17 bxc4 ♗b7
 18 ♗b3+

White continues a vigorous prosecution of the offensive against the black king. By attacking the a7-pawn he is able to tie down the black pieces and deploy his rooks on the abandoned d-file. Much less appropriate was 18 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 19 ♖d1, aiming to exploit the doubled c-pawns in the endgame.

- 18 ... ♖a8
 19 ♖d4 ♖b8
 20 ♗a4 ♖b7
 21 ♖d3 (93)



- 21 ... ♗e6

Harding gives the following variations to illustrate the difficulty of Black's situation:

a) 21 ... ♖hb8 22 ♖a3 c5 (22 ... ♖b1+ 23 ♗c2) 23 ♗c6 cxd4 24 ♖xa7+! ♖xa7 25 ♗a4+ ♗b6 26 ♗b5+ ♖a7 27 ♗a5 mate.

b) 21 ... ♗b4 22 ♗xc6 ♗b1+ 23 ♗d2 ♗xa2+ (23 ... ♗xh1 24 ♖b3 ♖hb8 25 ♖a3 and 26 ♖xa7+) 24 ♗e3 ♗b8 (24 ... ♗a5 25 ♖a1 ♗b4 26 ♖da3 ♗b8 27 ♖xa7+) 25 ♖a1

♗c2 26 ♖xa7+ ♖xa7 (26 ... ♖a8 27 ♖b6+ ♗b8 28 ♖xc7+!) 27 ♖xa7 ♗c1+ 28 ♗e2 ♖xa7 29 ♗xc7+-.

- 22 ♖hd1 ♖c8

A passive response but Black really has to way out:

a) 22 ... ♖hb8 23 ♖a3 ♖h1+ 24 ♗c2 ♖8b7 (24 ... ♗f5+ 25 ♗c3 ♖8b7 26 ♖xa7) 25 ♖xa7 ♖7b2+ (25 ... ♖1b2+ 26 ♗c3 ♖xe5+ 27 ♖d4+ ♗b8 28 ♗a8+) 26 ♗c3 ♗b7 27 ♗a6+- (Harding).

b) 22 ... ♖h6 23 g3 ♗h3 24 ♖xa7 ♖xa7 25 ♗xc6+ ♖b7 26 ♖d8+ ♖xd8 27 ♖xd8+ ♖a7 28 ♗a4+ ♗b6 29 ♗b5+ ♖a7 30 ♗a5 mate (Harding).

- 23 ♖b3 ♖cb8

- 24 ♖xa7! 1-0

Black resigned in view of the continuation:

a) 24 ... ♖xb3 25 ♖b6+ ♗b7 26 ♗a7+ ♗c8 27 ♗xc7 mate.

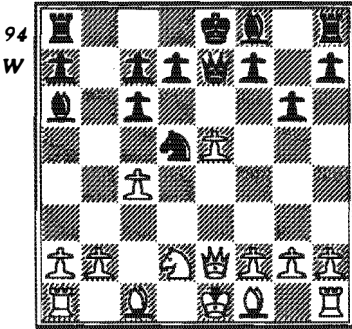
b) 24 ... ♖xa7 25 ♖xb8+ ♗xb8 26 ♖d8+ ♗b7 27 ♗b4+ ♖a6 28 ♖d3 and 29 ♖a3+.

Instead of 9 ... ♖b6 10 b3 g6, Black can also play the immediate 9 ... g6, deferring a decision on where to place the d5-knight. However, even then his task is not easy, as the next game shows.

**Sveshnikov - Schüssler
 Palma 1989**

- 1 e4 e5
 2 ♖f3 ♖c6
 3 d4 exd4

- 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6
 5 ♗xc6 bxc6
 6 e5 ♖e7
 7 ♖e2 ♗d5
 8 c4 ♖a6
 9 ♗d2 g6 (94)



This traditional move used to be considered the main line but Black has struggled with it recently.

10 b3

After the more sedate 10 ♗f3, the game Barczay - Pogacs, Hungarian Ch 1964, continued 10 ... ♗g7 11 ♗g5 f6?! (11 ... ♖b4+ 12 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 13 ♗xd2 ♗b6 14 b3=) 12 exf6 ♖xe2+ 13 ♖xe2 ♗xf6 14 0-0-0 0-0-0 15 ♗d4 c5 16 ♗b3 ♖b7 17 f3 ♖de8 18 ♖d3 d6 19 ♖de1 ♗d7 20 ♗a5 ♗e5 21 ♖c2 ♖a8 22 ♖d2 ♖hf8 23 h4!± Barczay - Pogacs, Hungarian Ch 1964

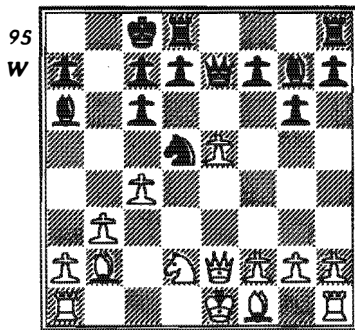
- 10 ... ♗g7
 11 ♖b2 0-0-0!? (96)

The point of Black's play is to reach a position similar to the previous game but with the black knight still on d5. This makes it harder for White to support the pawn on e5 as the

f4-advance now requires preparation. With the same idea, also possible is 11 ... 0-0 12 0-0-0 when Black can continue:

a) 12 ... c5?! 13 ♗e4 ♗b4 (13 ... ♗f4 14 ♖e3 ♖xe5 15 ♗xc5 ♖xb2+ 16 ♖xb2 ♖f6+ 17 ♖c3 and White is slightly better according to Jovcic) 14 ♗f6+ ♖h8 15 h4 ♖e6 16 h5 g5 17 ♗xd7 ♖f5 (17 ... ♖fd8 18 h6! ♖xh6 19 ♖xh6 ♖xh6 20 e6+-) 18 ♖c3 h6 19 ♗xc5 ♖ae8 20 ♖xb4 ♖xe5 21 ♖f3 ♖xc5 22 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 23 ♖xf8 ♖xf8 24 f3 ♖g7 25 ♖d3 1-0 Zhuravlev - Shaposnic, Corr 1970.

b) 12 ... ♖ab8 13 ♖e4 ♗b6 14 f4 ♖fe8 15 ♖c2 d5 16 h4! (16 c5? ♖xf1 17 cxb6 ♖xg2 18 bxa7 ♖a8 19 ♖hg1 ♖h3± Hennings - Savon, Harrachov 1967) 16 ... ♖c8 17 h5 ♖g4 18 hxg6 fxg6 19 ♖e1 a5 20 ♖d3 ♖f8 with an unclear position, Zverev - Lisenkov, Corr 1974.



12 0-0-0 ♖he8

Black now embarks on a straightforward-looking plan of undermining e5 by ... f6. However, in this instance White is

able to utilize his space advantage to launch a crushing attack.

13 g3

A necessary measure to support f4.

13 ... ♖b6

14 f4 f6

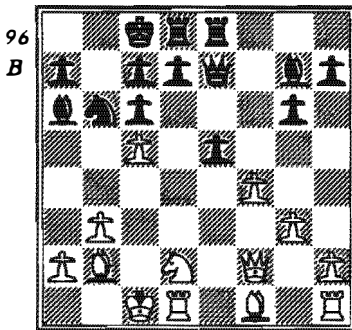
The extra tempo would have been better expended by safeguarding against tactics on the queenside. One possible idea is 14 ... ♖b8 and then 15 ... ♖b7.

15 ♜f2 fxe5?

A crisis point has now been reached; Black's best choice was 15 ... ♖b7 though after 16 c5 ♖d5 17 ♖e4 White remains in top.

16 c5! (96)

A typical tactical idea to blast open the queenside.



16 ... ♔xf1

17 cxb6 ♔d3

18 bxc7 ♖xc7

19 ♜xa7+

White is now a clear pawn up and Black's king position has been shattered.

19 ... ♖c8

20 ♖f3 e4

21 ♖e5 ♖b5

22 a4 ♖e2

23 ♖d2 d6

24 ♜a8+ ♖c7

25 ♜xc6+ ♖b8

26 ♜b6+ ♖a8

27 ♖c6 ♖c8

28 ♖xe2 1-0

In the next game we discuss the immediate 9 ... 0-0-0. However, before this the two players embark on the charade 9 ♜e4 ♖f6 10 ♜e2 ♖d5 repeating moves, so this move is actually 11 ... 0-0-0.

**Timman - Karpov
Amsterdam 1985**

1 e4 e5

2 ♖f3 ♖c6

3 d4 exd4

4 ♖xd4 ♖f6

5 ♖xc6 bxc6

6 e5 ♜e7

7 ♜e2 ♖d5

8 c4 ♖a6

9 ♜e4 ♖f6

An independent variation is 9 ... ♖b6, which is examined in the next chapter.

10 ♜e2 ♖d5

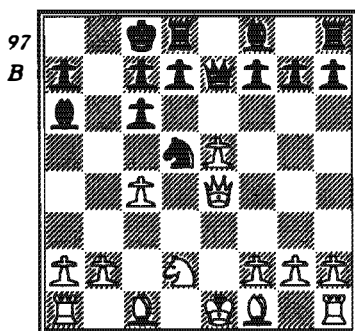
11 ♖d2

Obviously White does not 'offer' Black a draw by 11 ♜e4, but elects to enter the variation under discussion in this chapter.

11 ... 0-0-0

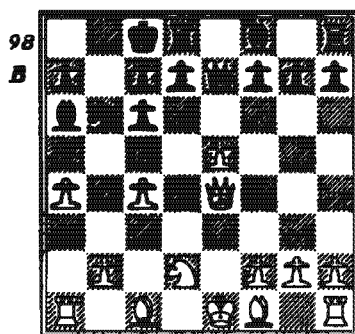
12 ♜e4 (97)

White aggressively takes up



the gauntlet. A more cautious approach is 12 d3 e8 13 c2 d6 14 h3 d6 15 c5! Qb7 16 cxd6 cxd6 17 Qa6 c7 18 Qxb7+ Qxb7 19 Qe3± Estrin - Liberzon, Moscow Ch 1958.

12 ... d6
13 e4?! (98)



Timman has also tried 13 c5 in this position (see the next chapter), which is probably also too ambitious. Practice has also seen:

a) 13 b3 f6 14 Qb2 fxe5 15 0-0-0 Qb8 16 cxe5 cxe5 17 Qxe5 Qa3+ 18 Qc2 Qhf8 19 f3 Qf7 (W. Schmid - R. O'Reilly, Jersey 1973) 20 c5! Qxf1 21 cxb6 d6 22 Qxf1+-.

b) 13 Qe2?! e8 14 f4 f6 15

d3 fxe5 16 fxe5 d5! 17 cxd5 Qb4+ 18 Qxb4 Qxb4+ 19 Qd2 Qxd2+ 20 Qxd2 Qxe2 21 Qxe2 cxd5 22 Qd3 Qc4± Greenfeld - Lev, Tel Aviv 1992.

13 ... d5!

A classical response to White's flank attack, counter-attacking in the centre. This is a marked improvement on Handoko - Kovacevic, Zagreb 1985, which continued: 13 ... Qb7?! 14 a5 d8 15 b4 Qb8 16 Qe2 f6 17 f4 fxe5 18 fxe5 e8 19 d3 Qe6 20 c5 Qxe2 21 Qxe2 d6 22 Qb1 dxe5 23 Qa6 Qg6 24 Qb2 Qe7 25 0-0 intending 26 Qe3 and 27 b5+-.

14 cxd5 Qxf1
15 d6 Qxd6

Instead 15 ... cxd6 16 Qxc6+ Qc7 17 Qxc7+ Qxc7 18 exd6+ Qxd6 19 Qxf1 Qb4 20 d3 Qd1+ 21 Qe2 Qxh1 22 Qf4+ Qb7 23 Qxh1 e8+ 24 Qe3 Qxa4 leaves an equal game according to Timman. Karpov prefers to keep the rook active in order to put pressure on e5.

16 Qxf1!

Obviously bad is 16 exd6 Qxe4+ 17 Qxe4 Qxg2-+. Not much better is 16 Qxf1 Qd5 or 16 Qxf1 Qd5 when Black is ready to play ... f6 and catch the white king in the centre.

16 ... e6!

Karpov finds the most exact way of undermining the e-pawn. Other moves would allow White to create counterplay:

a) 16 ... f6 17 e3! xe5 18 c2 intending to castle and continue the queenside attack.

b) 16 ... d5 17 f4 d7 (17 ... g5 18 e3!) 18 e3 f5 (18 ... a5!?) 19 exf6 gxf6 20 a5! f5 21 c2 Qb4+ 22 f2 xa5? (22 ... a8±; 22 ... xa5? 23 xa5 xa5 24 c3+-) 23 xa5 xa5 24 b4! Qxb4 25 b2+-.

17 f4 g5
18 g3

The only effective way to reinforce f4:

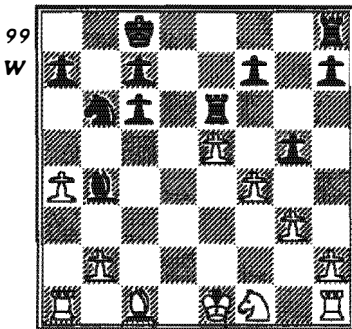
a) 18 e3 g3 gxf4 19 Qxf4 b4+ 20 b4 Qxb4+ 21 f2 d5 22 f3 xf4 23 f4 he8-+.

b) 18 d2 gxf4 19 0-0 c5+ 20 h1 xe5±.

18 ... b4+

Black decides that the best chance of exploiting White's loose pawn formation lies in the endgame. With the queens on, White can create some
18 ... gxf4 19 gxf4 f6 (19 ... h4+ 20 e3 d5 21 d2 h6 22 0-0 g8 23 a3) 20 e3 fxe5 21 f5 with the initiative according to Karpov.

19 b4 Qxb4+ (99)



20 Qd2

White reluctantly parts with his bishop, recognising that now the f4-pawn will be harder to defend. However, the alternative was also unattractive: 20 f2 f6! 21 fxg5 fxg5 22 Qxg5 xe5 23 f4 f8±.

20 ... Qxd2+
21 d2 xd2 gxf4
22 gxf4 d5
23 0-0

Also worthy of consideration is 23 f1 to keep the white king away from the marauding rooks.

23 ... g8+
24 h1 g4
25 b3?!

A stiffer defence was 25 c4 when Black must be very accurate to maintain his advantage:

a) 25 ... xf4 26 e3 h4 27 f5 g4 28 e3=.

b) 25 ... xf4 26 xf4 xf4 27 f1 d3 28 xf7=.

c) 25 ... f6! 26 f5 fe8 27 b3 fxe5 28 f6 e4 29 f7 f8 30 e5 g5 31 xc6 d7±.

25 ... xf4

The task for Black is much harder after 25 ... xf4 26 xf4 xf4 27 d4! (27 f1 d3 28 xf7 xe5±) 27 ... xe5 28 xc6 and 29 xa7+.

26 ae1 geg6
27 f3 h5
28 d4 d5

If the h-pawn is advanced then White's knight comes into the game with devastating

effect: 28 ... h4? 29 ♗f5! with the unpleasant threats of 29 ♗e7+ and 29 ♗e3.

29 ♖d1 ♖e4
30 ♗b3 ♖e2
31 ♖g1

White is careful not to allow the rooks to double on the second rank with 31 ... ♖gg2.

31 ... ♖xe5

Timman had prepared a clever defence in case of the immediate rook exchange: 31 ... ♖xg1+ 32 ♗xg1 ♖xb2 33 ♗c5 ♖c2! 34 e6 f6 35 ♗e4 ♖e2 36 ♗xf6 ♖xe6 (36 ... h4 37 ♗d7! ♖xe6 38 ♗c5) 37 ♗xh5.

32 ♖xf7 ♖xg1+
33 ♗xg1 ♗b4
34 ♖h7 ♗d3
35 ♗d4 ♗b7
36 b3 a5
37 ♖h6 ♗b4
38 ♗f2 ♖e4?!

In time-trouble Black begins to go astray; instead he should play 38 ... c5 39 ♗b5 c4! 40 bxc4 c6 41 ♗d6+ ♗b6 with excellent chances.

39 ♗e6 ♗b6
40 ♗f3 ♖e1
41 h4!

Now White has good chances of holding the game due to his potential passed h-pawn. The game concluded:

41 ... ♗d5
42 ♗d4 ♖e3+
43 ♗f2 ♖c3
44 ♖xh5 ♖d3
45 ♗f3 ♖xb3
46 ♖f5 ♖b4?!

46 ... ♗c5!.

47 h5 ♗c5
48 h6 ♖b8
49 ♖h5 ♖h8
50 h7 ♗b4
51 ♖h6 ♗f6!

51 ... ♗xa4? 52 ♗g5 and 53 ♗f7+-.

52 ♖xf6 ♖xh7
53 ♖f4+ ♗a3
54 ♗e2 ♖d7
55 ♗d2 ♖d8

55 ... c5? 56 ♗c4+ ♗xa4 57 ♗b6+-; 56 ... ♗b4 57 ♗e5+ ♖d4 58 ♗c6+-.

56 ♖c4 ♖b8
57 ♖c1 ♖b4
½-½

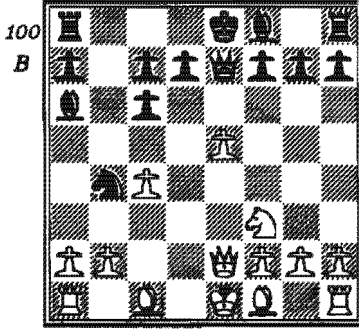
In this chapter we have so far examined systems for Black with 9 ... ♗b6, 9 ... g6 and 9 ... 0-0-0, or a combination of these moves. However, Black also has the interesting 9 ... ♗d4, intending to redeploy the knight via c6 to d4. It is to this system that we now turn our attention.

Oll - Kalinin USSR 1986

1 e4 e5
2 ♗f3 ♗c6
3 d4 exd4
4 ♗xd4 ♗f6
5 ♗xc6 bxc6
6 e5 ♗e7
7 ♗e2 ♗d5
8 c4 ♘a6
9 ♗d2 ♗b4?!

This is arguably Black's toughest line of resistance, exploiting the vulnerability of the c2-square to gain time to bring the knight to c6.

10 ♖f3 (100)



10 ... c5

The tempting 10 ... d5?! only leaves the black pieces in a tangle if White finds the correct response:

a) 11 b3? dxc4 12 bxc4 0-0-0 13 ♗e4 ♗d7 14 ♗e2? (14 ♗d2?) 14 ... f5! 15 ♗b1 ♗xc4 16 ♗g5 ♖d3+ 17 ♗f1 ♗e7 18 ♗xe7 ♗xe7 19 ♖e1 ♗xe5 20 ♖xd3 ♗xd3 21 ♗xd3 ♗xd3 22 g3 ♗e4 23 ♗g1 ♗hd8 24 ♗c2 ♗f3 25 ♗e1 ♗d2 26 ♗c5 ♗d1 0-1 Saeed - Thipsay, Dubai 1985.

b) 11 a3! ♗xc4 12 ♗d1 ♗xf1 13 ♗xf1 ♖a6 14 ♗a4 ♖b8 15 ♗g5 and now:

b1) 15 ... ♗e6 16 ♗c1 h6 17 ♗h4 g5 18 ♗g3 ♗e7 19 h4 g4 20 ♖d4 ♗d7 21 ♗b3+- Kopayev - Zhukovitsky, Kiev 1945.

b2) 15 ... ♗d7 16 e6! fxe6 17 ♖e5 ♗d6 18 ♗f4+-.

b3) 15 ... ♗c5 16 ♖d4 ♗b6 17 ♗c1 ♗c5 18 ♖f5 ♗g8 19 ♗g4

♖a6 20 b4 ♗xf2 21 ♗c2 h5 22 ♗f4 f6 23 ♗xf2 fxe5 24 ♖d6+ cxd6 25 ♗f7+ 1-0 Zaidel - Rapoport, Riga 1966.

11 a3

The unusual 11 ♗e4 prevents Black from castling queenside but presents a target for the bishop when it comes to b7. The game Gobet - Carlhammer, St. Martin 1991, turned out better for Black after: 11 ... ♗b8 12 b3 ♗b7 13 ♗e2 f6 14 ♗b2 ♗xf3 15 gxf3 fxe5 16 ♗h3 ♖c6 17 0-0-0 ♗g5+ 18 ♗b1 ♗d6 19 ♗hg1 ♗h6 20 ♗f5 ♗f6 21 ♗e4 ♖d4 22 ♗d3 g6 23 ♗c1 a5 24 ♗g5 ♗g7 25 ♗d2 a4 26 ♗b2 axb3 27 axb3 ♗e7 28 ♗c1 ♗f8 29 ♗g3.

A rarely-seen idea is 11 ♗f4 ♗e6 12 ♗e4 ♗c6 13 ♗xc6 ♖xc6 14 0-0-0 h6 15 h4± Cuartas - Zuidema, Skopje 1972.

11 ... ♖c6

12 ♗d2 0-0-0 (101)

An innovation which turns out well for Black. After the older 12 ... ♗e6 13 ♗c3 White has good chances of an advantage:

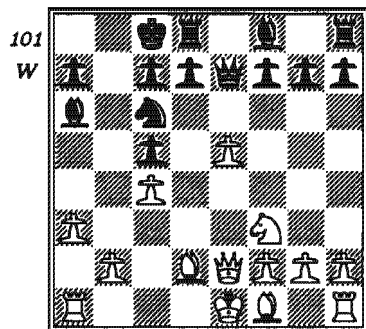
a) 13 ... h6?! 14 0-0-0 0-0-0 15 h4 g6 16 g3 ♗b7 17 ♗d3 ♗g7 18 ♗h3 ♗e7 19 ♗he1 ♗b8 20 ♗e3 ♗hg8 21 ♗d5 ♗f8 22 ♗d3± Makropoulou - Litinskaya, Malaysia 1990.

b) 13 ... ♗e7 14 0-0-0 f6 15 exf6 ♗xe2 16 f7+ ♗xf7 17 ♗xe2 and now:

b1) 17 ... ♗hd8 18 ♗d5 (18 h4!) 18 ... ♗b7 19 ♗e1 ♖d4 20 ♗h5 ♖xe2+ 21 ♗xe2 ♗xf3 22 ♗f5+

♖f6 23 ♜xf3± Barczay - Forintos, Hungarian Ch 1964.

b2) 17 ... d6 18 ♖d3 ♜he8 19 ♖e4 ♖b7 20 ♖d5+ ♜f8 21 h4 ♗d8 22 ♜he1 ♖xd5 23 cxd5 ♖f6 24 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 25 ♖xf6 gxf6 26 ♗d2 ♜f7 27 ♗c4 ♗b7 (Jovanovic - Eretova, Skopje Ol 1972) 28 ♜d3! intending ♜b3±.



13 ♖c3

Kalinin considers 13 0-0-0 h6 14 ♖c3 ♜e6 15 h4 g6 to be unclear.

13 ... d5!
14 exd6 ♜xd6!
15 ♜xe7 ♖xe7

In compensation for the doubled c-pawns, Black has active pieces. However, if White can develop his forces harmoniously, then the superior pawn structure will ensure his advantage in the long run.

16 ♖e2

If 16 ♖xg7 the king in the middle of the board becomes a liability: 16 ... ♜e8 17 ♖e2 ♜e6!-+. However, White could have chosen the simple 16 ♜d1 ♜e6+ 17 ♜d2 ♜d8+ (17 ... ♖f6!?) 18 ♜c1 ♜xd1+ 19 ♜xd1 ♖f6=.

16 ... ♜e6
17 b3 ♜e8
18 ♜a2

A clever way of lending support to e2. White has not yet solved all his problems since his king's rook does not have any scope.

18 ... ♖f6
19 ♖xf6 gxf6
20 ♜d1 ♗a5
21 ♖d3 ♜b6
22 ♖xh7?!

There is no need to snatch the h-pawn as White can afford to give up a pawn and still draw due to Black's crippled pawns, e.g. 22 ♗d2! ♖xb3 23 ♗xb3 ♜xb3 24 ♜c2 ♜b6 25 ♜c3 h6 26 ♜e2=.

22 ... ♗xb3

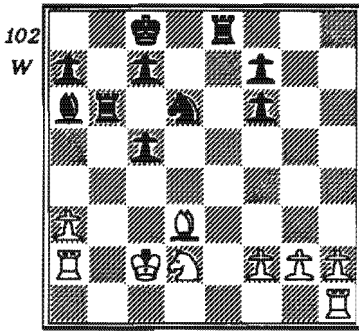
Kalinin suggests 22 ... ♜xb3 as an alternative but it does not promise Black an advantage: 23 ♗d2 ♜c3 24 h4 ♗xc4 25 ♗xc4 ♖xc4 26 ♜d2 ♜b3 27 ♖c2 ♜e2+ 28 ♜d1 ♜xf2 29 ♜e1 (29 h5 ♜c3 30 h6 ♖xa2 31 h7 ♜xc2 32 h8♙+ ♜b7-+) 29 ... ♜e2+ 30 ♜d1=.

23 ♖d3 ♗a5
24 ♗d2 ♗xc4
25 ♜c2

The double capture on c4 fails to ... ♜b1+.

25 ... ♗d6 (102)
26 h4

This advance is the only way to divert Black's forces from the attack against the white king. Less clear is 26 ♖xa6+ ♜xa6 27 h4 ♗b5 28 h5 ♗d4+.



26 ... c4
 27 Qf1 f5
 28 h5

White must be consistent; anything else allows Black to create insurmountable problems:

a) 28 xc4? c6 29 b3 e1-.

b) 28 xc4? xc4 29 xc4 e2+-.

28 ... d4+

In time-trouble Black understandably settles for a perpetual check. However, 28 ... e1 would have caused White a

few more difficulties in making the draw: 29 f3 (29 h6? d4+ 30 c3 e2+-) 29 ... e1 30 h6 b7 31 h7 (31 d2 d4+ 32 c3 e2+ 33 xc4 a6+ 34 d5 d3!-+; or 33 xe2 xh1 34 g4+ f5 35 xf5+ d8 36 h7 xg2-+) 31 ... e4+ 32 c3 (32 d2!?) 32 ... c1+ 33 d2 c3+ 34 e2 b2+ 35 xb2 cxb2 36 h8+ b7 37 d2 c2 38 d! c1+ 39 e2 c2= (Kalinin).

29 c3 b5+
 30 c2 d4+
 31 c3 b5+
 32 c2 1/2-1/2

Conclusion

The older 9 d2 is still a dangerous threat to Black, especially against the set-up that Black employed in Harding - Zhividov. Probably 9 ... b4 offers the safest path to equality.

11 Mieses Variation:

8 ... ♖a6 9 ♔e4

Although 9 b3 and 9 ♗d2 are viable methods of playing for an advantage with the white pieces in the Mieses Variation, 9 ♗e4 has rather gone out of fashion. Primarily this has been because Black can force a repetition of moves after 9 ... ♗f6 10 ♗c2 ♗d5 although it is far from clear that White can achieve any advantage after 9 ... ♗b6 either.

Timman - Karpov London 1984

1	e4	e5
2	♗f3	♗c6
3	d4	exd4
4	♗xd4	♗f6
5	♗xc6	bxc6
6	e5	♗e7
7	♗e2	♗d5
8	c4	♖a6
9	♗e4	

White wastes no time in breaking the pin. A less well analysed idea is also possible: 9 g3!? g6 (9 ... f6 10 e6! dxe6 11 ♗h3 with an unclear position) 10 ♗g2 ♗g7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♞e1 ♞ae8 13 ♗a3 f6 (not 13 ... ♗xe5?! 14 ♗xd5! cxd5 15 ♗h6 winning

material; but 13 ... ♗b6 14 ♗c2! ♗c5 15 ♗f4 ♗xe5 16 ♗h6 ♗g7 17 ♗xg7 ♗xg7 18 ♗c3+ ♗g8 19 b4 is unclear according to van der Wiel) 14 ♗c2! ♗b6?! (14 ... ♗b4 15 ♗b3 fxe5 16 ♗d2 ♞b8 17 ♗b5 ♗d5! 18 cxd5 ♞xb5 19 ♗a4 ♗b7 with an equal position according to Nikolic) 15 e6 c5 16 ♗b5 dxe6 17 ♗xa7 ♗xc4 18 ♗e3 ♞f7 19 ♞ad1 and White has the better chances, van der Wiel - Nikolic, Tilburg 1992.

9 ... ♗b6

Black can also choose to repeat moves here with 9 ... ♗f6 10 ♗e2 ♗d5, as we saw in the game Timman - Karpov, Amsterdam 1985, in chapter 10.

10 ♗d2

Other continuations lead to an equal game:

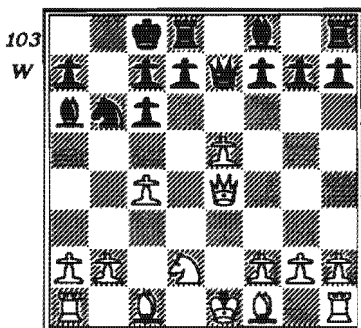
a) 10 ♗d3 ♗xc4! 11 ♗xc4 d5= ECO.

b) 10 ♗c3 and now:

b1) 10 ... 0-0-0 11 c5 ♗xf1 12 cxb6 ♖a6 13 bxc7 intending ♗f4± Randvir - Raisa, USSR 1961.

b) 10 ... f5 11 ♗xf5 ♗xc4 12 ♗xc4 ♗xc4 13 0-0 g6 14 ♗e4 ♗e6 is unclear, Sveshnikov - Zaitsev, USSR 1975.

10 ... O-O-O (103)

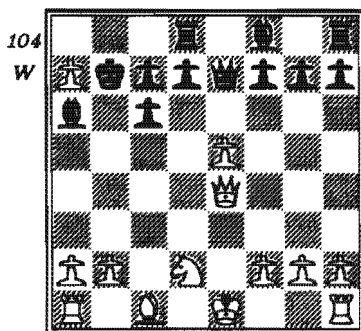


A standard manoeuvre in such positions. The king is fairly safe on the queenside and Black can eventually unravel his pieces after ... d5 and ... f6.

11 c5

The text move signals an all-out assault on the king. White's alternatives at this point were examined (by transposition) in the previous chapter (see Timman - Karpov, Amsterdam 1985). It is important that the reader keeps a close eye out for such transpositions in his or her own games.

11 ... Qxf1
 12 cxb6 Qa6
 13 bxa7 ♖b7 (104)



Following the series of exchanges Black has few problems; he can use the a7-pawn as shelter for his own king and delay capturing it until the endgame, whilst White's monarch is trapped in the centre of the board.

14 ♖b3 f6!

Black immediately takes steps to open up the position.

15 f4

If White sacrifices the e-pawn he is left with an unsatisfactory ending due to Black's powerful central pawn mass: 15 Qd2 ♗xe5 16 ♗xe5 fxe5 17 O-O-O d5 18 ♖a5+ ♖b6 19 b4 ♖b5!.

15 ... fxe5
 16 fxe5 ♗e8
 17 Qf4 ♗h4+

It is ironic that after all of White's early aggression it is Black who now creates a strong attack against the white king. It is less precise for Black to enter the endgame: 17 ... ♗b4+ 18 ♗xb4+ Qxb4+ 19 ♖d1 ♗hf8 and Black is only slightly better.

18 g3 ♗h5
 19 ♗c1 ♖a8
 20 h4 d5!

Karpov displays commendable energy in conducting his offensive. This is much more difficult to meet than the greedy: 20 ... Qd6?! 21 ♗c5 Qxe5 22 Qxe5 (22 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 23 Qxe5 ♗e8) 22 ... d5 23 g4 ♗xe5 24 gxh5 ♗xe4+ 25 ♖d1.

21 ~~g3~~

White tries to keep e5 well protected or else he would run into an exchange sacrifice: 21 ~~c2~~ ~~fxe5+~~ (21 ... c5!?) 22 ~~Qxe5~~ ~~fxe5+~~ 23 ~~f2~~ (23 ~~g1~~ ~~h5+!~~) 23 ... ~~Qd6~~.

21 ... g5
 22 ~~Qxg5~~ ~~Qb4+~~
 23 ~~f2~~ ~~hf8+~~
 24 ~~g2~~ (105)

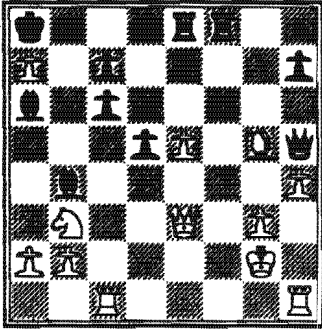
24 ... ~~fxe5!~~

A fitting coup de grâce to Black's impressively managed attack, smashing a hole in White's fortress.

25 ~~fxe5~~ ~~xf3+~~
 26 ~~h2~~ ~~xf2+~~
 0-1

White resigned in view of 27 ~~h3~~ ~~Qc8+~~ 28 g4 ~~xf3+~~ 29 ~~g3~~ ~~fxg3~~ mate.

105
 B



Conclusion

It would appear that 9 ~~g4~~ is not sufficient to promise White anything from the opening. Since White has interesting possibilities after both 9 b3 and 9 ~~d2~~ these variations are the ones to which White should turn.

12 Mises Variation: Other Lines

One of the main advantages of the Mises Variation is that after 4 ... ♘f6 Black has very few means of avoiding the main line with 8 ... ♙a6 or 8 ... ♘b6. This chapter deals with these few deviations, which are rarely seen in tournament play, and not without good reason.

Smagin - Murey Vienna 1991

- | | | |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♘f3 | ♘c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♘xd4 | ♘f6 |
| 5 | ♘xc6 | bxc6 |
| 6 | e5 | ♙e7 |
| 7 | ♙e2 | ♘d5 |
| 8 | c4 | ♙b4+ |

With this check Black avoids the fashionable and heavily analysed variations after 8 ... ♙a6 or 8 ... ♘b6. However, the queen soon becomes a target on b4 and White is able to quickly mobilize his pieces.

- 9 ♘d2 ♘f4
10 ♙e3 (106)

Prior to this game, White invariably played 10 ♙e4 here. After 10 ... ♘e6 11 ♘e2 Black

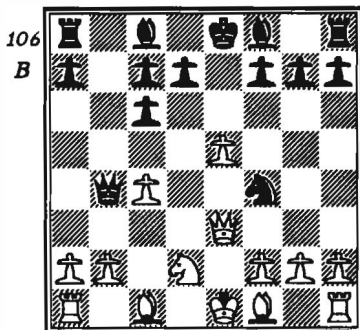
can choose between:

a) 11 ... a5 12 0-0 a4 13 ♘f3 ♙e7 14 ♙b1 0-0 15 ♘d4 ♘xd4 16 ♙xd4= Botterill - Rumens, Birmingham 1975.

b) 11 ... ♙b7 and now:

b1) 12 0-0 c5 13 ♙e3 ♘d4 14 ♙d3 ♙e7 15 ♘e4± Estrin - Levenfish, USSR 1950.

b2) 12 a3 ♙b6 13 0-0 c5 14 ♙e3 ♙e7 15 f4 ♘d4 16 ♙d3± Estrin - Sinsler, Moscow 1968.



- 10 ... ♘e6
11 ♙d3 ♙b6
12 ♙g3

The centralization of the knight by 12 ♘e4 fails to achieve anything after 12 ... ♙b4+! 13 ♙d2 ♙xe3+ 14 fxe3=.

- 12 ... d5?!

This works out badly for Black so he should have tried

either 12 ... Qe7 or 12 ... d6.

13 0-0 a5

14 Gh1!

A preliminary measure to allow the f-pawn to advance.

14 ... h5

15 h4 g6

16 Gf3!

The plan of f4-f5 is abandoned as Black is now ready to meet f4-f5. However, in doing so he made serious concessions and it is now the dark-square weaknesses around the king that come under scrutiny.

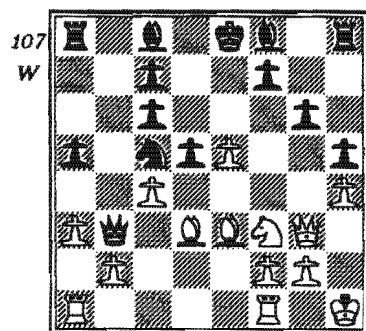
16 ... Gc5

An attempt to establish a blockade on the f5-square would backfire: 16 ... Gg7? 17 Qxg6! fxg6 18 Wxg6+ Gd8 19 Qg5+- . Now, however, 17 Qxg6 is well met by 17 ... Gg8 .

17 Qe3 Wb4

If 17 ... Wxb2 18 Qd4 Wb4 19 e6 Gg8 20 exf7+ Gxf7 21 Ge5+ and Black is left in a miserable position.

18 a3 Wb3 (107)



19 Qxg6!

This tremendous shot allows White to rip a hole in Black's

flimsy defences.

19 ... Gg8

It is hopeless to capture the bishop: 19 ... fxg6 20 Wxg6+ Gd8 21 Wf6++ .

20 Qxf7+ Gxf7

21 e6+!

The tactical point of White's play is revealed. The king has to defend g8 so more open lines are created.

21 ... Qxe6

Forced, in view of 21 ... Gxe6 22 Ge5+ Ge7 23 Wxg8+- . However, the development of the bishop comes too late to save Black; too much time has been spent on moving the queen and knight backwards and forwards and on weakening pawn moves.

22 Wxc7+ Gg6

Other possibilities bring no joy to Black:

a) 22 ... Gd7 23 Ge5+ Ge8 24 Gxd7 Qxd7 25 Wfel+- .

b) 22 ... Ge8 23 Wxc6+- .

c) 22 ... Qe7 23 Qxc5+- .

23 Ge5+ Gf5

If 23 ... Gf6 24 Qd4! is decisive.

24 Gxc6 Gg4

The best chance; preparing to meet 25 Gd4+ with 25 ... Gxd4 removing a key attacking piece. Obviously bad is 24 ... Wxc4 25 Wxe5+ Gg6 26 Wg5+ Gh7 (26 ... Gf7 27 Ge5+) 27 Wxh5+ Gg7 28 Qd4++ .

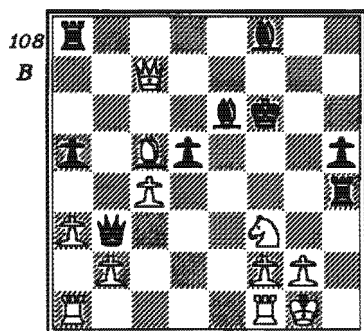
25 Qxc5 Wxh4+

26 Gg1 Gg6

27 Ge5+ Gf6

28 Gf3?! (108)

A more precise method is 28 Qxf8 Rxf8 29 Qf3 Wxf3 30 gxf3 Rg8+ 31 Wg3+- .



28 ... Wxf3!

This remarkable move must have come as something of a shock to White. Black hopes to exploit the open lines which would appear around the white king after 29 gxf3 Qxc5 30 Rfe1 (30 Wxc5?? Rg8+) 30 ... Rg8+ 31 Qf1 Qh3+ 32 Qe2 Re8+ 33 Qd2 Qd4+ 34 Qc3 Rxc4+ 35 Qb3\pm .

29 Qxf8! Rg4

After 29 ... Rxf8 30 gxf3! transposes to the note to White's 28th move.

30 Wf7+ Qf5

31 Wh7+! Qe5

There is no way out now: 31 ... Rg6 32 Wxg6+! Qxg6 33 gxf3+- ; or 31 ... Qf6 32 Qe7+- .

32 Rfe1+ Qd4

33 Rad1+ 1-0

Black resigned in view of the classic king hunt: 33 ... Qxc4 34 Rc1+ Qb5 35 Wb7+ Qa4 36 Wc6+ Qb3 37 Rc3+ Qxb2 38 Rc2+ Qb3 39 Rb1 mate. The most remarkable feature of this game is that Black's king avoided

checkmate for as long as it did!

In the next game we examine alternatives to 6 ... Wf7 . As we have seen, after 7 Wf2 both sides have difficulties in developing their kingside pieces, but, as the following game shows, neither 6 ... Qd5 nor 6 ... Qe4 promise Black an equal game so he should go in for 6 ... Wf7 regardless.

Stanisevski - Gordienko Corr 1987

1	e4	e5
2	Qf3	Qc6
3	d4	exd4
4	Qxd4	Qf6
5	Qxc6	bxc6
6	e5	Qd5

The omission of 6 ... Wf7 7 Wf2 makes it easier for White to develop his king's bishop. Neither does 6 ... Qe4 promise Black an equal game:

a) 7 Wf3 and now:

a1) 7 ... Qc5 8 Qc4 Qe6 9 0-0 Wh4 10 Qd2\pm Wade - Balanel, Bucharest 1954.

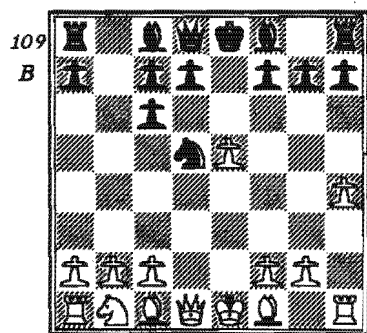
a2) 7 ... Qg5 8 Wg3 Qe6 9 Qd3 d5 10 0-0 g6 11 Qd2 f5 12 Qb3\pm Bednarski - Prameshuber, Kecskemet 1964.

a3) 7 ... Wh4 8 g3 (8 $\text{Qe2!?$) 8 ... Qg5 9 Wf2 (9 Wf3?!) Qd4 10 Qg2 Qe6= Troianescu - Radulescu, Romania 1955) 9 ... Wf4 10 Qxg5 Wxh1 11 Qc3 h6 (11 ... Qb4 12 0-0-0 Qxc3 13 bxc3 Wxh2 14 Wf3!\pm Hünerkopf - Klundt,

West Germany 1983/84; 11 ... a5? 12 0-0-0 Qa6 13 ♖g4! 1-0 Richter - Kosmata, Czechoslovakia 1977) 12 Qf4 ♗xh2 13 ♔e4 Qe7 14 0-0-0 0-0 15 ♗f3± Gusamov - Efimov, USSR 1959.

b) 7 Qe3 d5 8 exd6 cxd6 9 Qd3 ♔f6 10 0-0 Qe7 11 c4 0-0 12 ♔c3 Qe6 13 ♞e1 d5 14 cxd5 ♔xd5 15 ♔xd5 Qxd5 16 ♗c2± Timman - Korchnoi, Sarajevo 1984.

7 h4!? (109)



An experimental idea which takes the game into relatively uncharted territory. We have already come across a similar idea in chapter eight (Shirov - Agdestein) where both 6 ... ♗e7 7 ♗e2 ♔d5 8 h4!? and 8 c4 ♔b6 9 ♔d2 a5 10 h4 are discussed. White's idea is to prevent Black from playing ... ♗h4 and to support Qg5. White also has chances of an advantage after the more standard alternatives:

a) 7 Qd3 d6 8 exd6 cxd6 9 0-0 Qe7 10 Qe4 ♗c7 11 Qxd5 cxd5 12 ♔c3± Arseniev - Veselov, USSR 1960.

b) 7 c4 ♔b6 and now:

b1) 8 ♔c3 ♗e7 9 ♗e2 Qa6 10 ♗e4 ♗e6 11 b3 Qb4 12 Qd2 Qxc3 13 Qxc3 d5 14 ♗f3 dxc4 15 Qe2 0-0 16 0-0 ♞ad8 17 ♞fe1 ♞fe8 18 ♞ac1 c5 19 Qf1 ♔d5 20 bxc4 (20 Qxc4 Qxc4 21 bxc4 ♔b4 intending ♔c6-d4=) 20 ... ♔b4 21 Qxb4 cxb4 22 ♗e3 ½-½ Ljubovic - Spassky, Montreal 1979.

b2) 8 Qd3! Qa6 9 0-0 (9 ♗e2 Qe7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♔c3 ♞e8 12 ♗g4 and White is slightly better according to Keres) 9 ... Qxc4 10 Qxc4 ♔xc4 11 ♗g4 ♔b6 12 ♔c3 ♔d5 13 ♔xd5 cxd5 14 Qg5 ♗b8 15 ♞ad1 ♗b5 16 ♞fe1± Padevski - Witkowski, Laibach 1955.

7 ... d6

In his analysis of the game (upon which these notes are based) Velickovic suggests 7 ... ♗e7 which transposes to the variation 6 ... ♗e7 7 ♗e2 ♔d5 8 h4 after 8 ♗e2. Indeed, the analysis given in the notes to Shirov - Agdestein in chapter eight would indicate that this is Black's best chance here.

8 c4 ♔b6

After 8 ... ♔e7 9 exd6 cxd6 10 ♔c3 White can concentrate his forces on the weak pawn at d6.

9 c5

A spectacular idea hoping to open lines against the black king. A more natural course was the solid 9 exd6 Qxd6 (9 ... cxd6 10 ♗f3!±) 10 Qg5 f6 11 Qe3±.

9 ... ♔d5

The prospect of triple c-pawns in an ending has little appeal: 9 ... dxc5 10 ♖xd8+ ♗xd8 11 ♗c3±.

10 Qb5

It is also possible to make use of the h-pawn with 10 Qg5:

- a) 10 ... ♗d7 11 exd6 cxd6 12 Qc4! ♗e6+ (12 ... dxc5 13 0-0±) 13 ♗d2 ♗d7 14 ♖e1 ♗f5 15 ♗e2±.
- b) 10 ... f6 11 exf6 ♗xf6±.
- c) 10 ... Qe7 11 ♗a4 Qd7 (11 ... ♗d7 12 Qxe7 ♗xe7 13 ♗c3 dxe5 14 ♖d1 ♗g4 15 ♗a5!±) 12 exd6 cxd6 (12 ... Qxg5 13 hxg5 ♗xg5 14 ♗d2!±) 13 cxd6 Qxg5 14 hxg5 ♗xg5 15 ♗d2! 0-0 16 0-0-0! intending ♗h4±.

10 ... Qd7

Almost an automatic reaction to White's threat; the alternatives are no better:

- a) 10 ... cxb5 11 ♗xd5 Qe6 12 ♗c6+ Qd7 13 ♗e4 dxc5 (13 ... dxe5 14 Qe3!±) 14 Qg5 intending ♗c3 and 0-0-0.
- b) 10 ... ♗e7 11 ♗f3 Qd7 (11 ... d5 12 Qa4 ♖b8 13 a3!) 12 Qa4 dxe5 13 ♗c3 with the idea of Qe3 and 0-0-0±.

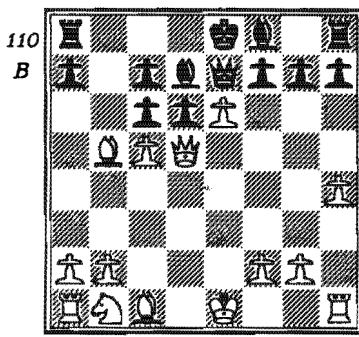
11 e6 ♗e7?!

Here Black should take up the gauntlet by accepting the pawn sacrifice: 11 ... fxe6 12 Qd3 Qe7 (12 ... ♗f6 13 g4!) 13 ♗h5+ ♗f8 with an unclear position.

12 ♗xd5!! (110)

A scintillating sacrifice, audaciously giving up the queen with only one other piece developed. However, White is soon able to box in the black

queen.



12 ... cxd5

Of course, 12 ... fxe6 13 ♗f3! wins due to the potentially loose rook on a8.

13 Qxd7+ ♗d8

14 Qg5 f6

15 ♗c3 c6

There is no easy way out: 15 ... fxg5 16 ♗xd5 gxf4 17 ♗xe7 Qxe7 18 ♖h3!±.

16 Qf4 dxc5

Other means of obtaining an escape square for the queen are flawed:

- a) 16 ... g6 17 cxd6 ♗g7 18 Qxc6 ♖c8 19 Qxd5+-.
- b) 16 ... g5 17 Qxd6! ♗g7 18 Qxc6 ♖c8 19 Qxd5 ♖xc5 (19 ... Qe7 20 Qb3+-) 20 Qxc5 Qxc5 21 0-0-0±.

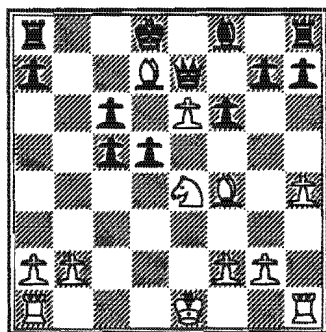
17 ♗e4! (111)

17 ... dxe4?!

Black finally buckles under the strain. The only way to prolong the struggle was 17 ... a5!? to free the rook. Other defences are also unsatisfactory:

- a) 17 ... g5? 18 ♗xg5? (18 hxg5!) 18 ... ♗g7 19 ♗f7+ ♗xf7

111
B



(19 ... ♖e7 20 ♕d6 mate) 20 exf7
♜xd7-+.

b) 17 ... c4 18 ♘d6 ♜xd6 19
♕xd6 ♕xd6 20 ♕xc6±.

18 0-0-0 c4

19 ♕xc6+ ♜c8

20 ♖d7 ♜xe6

21 ♖c7+ ♜d8

22 ♖d1+

The dormant rook joins in
the attack with devastating

consequences.

22 ... ♕d6

23 ♖xd6+ ♜xd6

24 ♕xd6 ♖c8

25 ♖d7+ ♜e8

26 ♕a4 1-0

Conclusion

The main merit of deviations in
this chapter is to avoid the
main lines. After 8 ... ♜b4+
White is quickly able to mobi-
lize his forces, as Smagin
showed, whilst 6 ... ♘d5 and 6
... ♘e4 allow White good chan-
ces of advantage. The specula-
tive line 6 ... ♘d5 7 h4!? leads
to very complicated play; 7 c4
♘b6 8 ♕d3 is a safe alternative
which guarantees a slight
advantage.

13 Neo-Mieses Variation

Apart from the Mieses Variation, White has several other possibilities after 4 ... ♘f6 5 ♗xc6 bxc6 which are considered in this chapter. However, neither 6 ♗d4, 6 ♖d3 nor 6 ♗d2 are sufficiently testing to force an advantage, although they are suitable for those who wish to avoid a theoretical battle in one of the main lines.

Papp - Csapo Hungary 1981

1	e4	e5
2	♗f3	♗c6
3	d4	exd4
4	♗xd4	♗f6
5	♗xc6	bxc6
6	♗d4 (112)	

An unusual line which might be successful if used as a surprise weapon. The queen supports e4 and White intends to discourage the freeing ... d5 in view of the formation ♗c3, ♖g5 followed by 0-0-0. Black should, however, be able to equalize without too much difficulty.

The other alternatives to 6 e5 lead the game in a different

direction:

a) 6 ♖d3 and now:

a1) 6 ... d6 7 0-0 ♖e7 8 ♗c3 0-0 9 h3 ♗d7 10 ♖e3 ♖f6 11 ♗d2 ♖e8 12 ♖ad1± Hoen - Vasquez, Skopje 1972.

a2) 6 ... ♖c5 7 e5! ♗d5 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♗d2! ♗f4 10 ♗e4 ♗xd3 11 ♗xd3 ♖e7 12 ♖f4±.

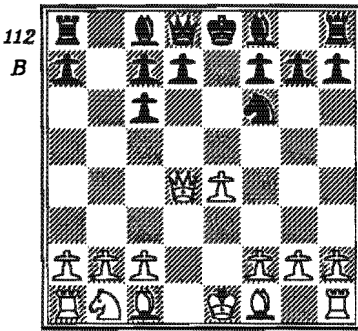
a3) 6 ... d5! 7 ♗d2 (7 ♗c3 ♖b4 transposes to the Scotch Four Knights but White can also consider 7 exd5!?) 7 ... ♖d6 8 h3 0-0 9 0-0 ♖e8 10 ♖e1 ♖b7 11 ♗f1 ♖f4 12 exd5 cxd5 13 ♗f3 ♖xc1 14 ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 15 ♗xc1 ♗a4 16 b3 ♗b4 17 ♗d2 ♗d6 18 ♖e1 a5 19 a4 c5 20 ♗g1 ♗f8 21 ♗g5 h6 22 ♗e5 ♖d8 23 ♗xd6+ ♖xd6 24 ♗d2 ♖e6 25 ♗f1= Gunnarsson - Ernst, Reykjavik 1990.

b) 6 ♗d2 and now:

b1) 6 ... d6 7 ♖d3 (7 ♖e2!? g6 8 0-0 ♖g7 9 f4 0-0 10 ♖f3±) 7 ... g6 8 0-0 ♖g7 9 ♗f3 0-0 10 ♖g5 h6= Bilek - Szabo, Budapest 1954.

b2) 6 ... d5 7 exd5 cxd5 8 ♖b5+ ♖d7 9 ♖xd7+ ♗xd7 10 0-0 ♖e7 11 ♗f3 0-0 12 ♖g5 ♖fe8 (12 ... h6!?) 13 ♖e1 c6 (Tartakower - Wolf, Germany 1922) 14 ♗e5 ♗b7 15 ♗f3 gives White a small

edge.



6 ... d6!?

This is rather passive; Black prepares to develop his king-side and then to strike out with ... c5. The alternatives are worth investigating.

a) 6 ... d5 7 ♖c3 and now:

a1) 7 ... ♕e6 8 ♗g5 ♕e7 9 exd5 cxd5 10 ♖b5+ ♗d7 11 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 12 ♖e3+ ♕e7 13 0-0-0 c6 14 ♖he1 a6 15 ♗xc6! ♗xc6 16 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 17 ♗xd5 ♖c7 18 ♗e5 ♖a7 19 ♗xe7+ ♖xe7 20 ♖d2 1-0 Thomas - Arrantes, Corr 1987.

a2) 7 ... ♕e7 8 exd5 0-0 9 ♖f4 cxd5 10 0-0-0 c5 11 ♖e5 ♕e6= Sax - Byrne, Amsterdam 1970.

b) 6 ... ♖e7 7 ♖c3 ♖b4 8 ♖e5+ ♕e7 9 ♗d3 0-0 10 0-0 ♖d6 11 ♖f5 ♖e6 12 ♖a5! d5 13 ♗e1 d4 14 ♗e2 c5 15 e5! ♗d5 16 ♗g3 ♗e8 17 ♗d2 ♖b7 18 c4! dxc3 19 bxc3 ♖b6 20 ♖a4 ♖e6 21 f4 ♖c8 22 f5 ♗b6 23 ♖g4 ♖b8 24 ♗h5 ♗g8 25 e6 ♖e8 26 ♗f4 (intending 27 exf7 and 28 ♗g6+) 26 ... ♖f8 27 f6 ♗xf6 28 ♖f5 1-0 Thomas - Crusi, Corr 1987.

c) 6 ... c5 7 ♖e3 intending ♗c3, ♗d2 and 0-0-0±.

7 ♖c3 ♕e7

8 h3

White introduces a safeguard against ... ♗g4 in order to develop the bishop on e3.

8 ... 0-0

9 ♕e3 c5

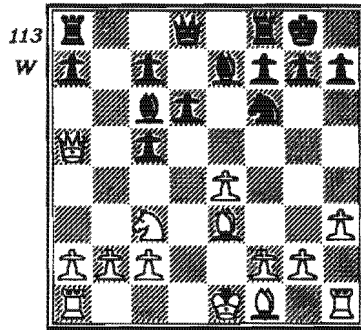
Now that the king has moved to safety, Black chases the queen from its central outpost and prepares to counter-attack against the e4-pawn.

10 ♖a4 ♗d7

11 ♖a5!

The queen looks out of play here but it can no longer be attacked and fixes the black queenside pawns. If White can advance with e5 the black c5-pawn will now be lost.

11 ... ♗c6 (113)



12 0-0-0

White must mobilize his forces quickly or Black will be able to take advantage of his king's central position. The threats of 13 e5 and 13 ♗xc5 force Black to act forcefully.

12 ... ♗xe4

13 ♗xe4 ♗xe4

14 Qxc5

Although Black has managed to dispense with one of his doubled pawns, White still enjoys the better chances and his queen now looks very well placed on a5.

14 ... Wg8?

An instinctive response to break the pin and create some counterplay. Black intends 15 ... Wc6 with a double attack against c2 and g2. However, he should have preferred 14 ... Qf6.

15 Qd4 c5

Black is obliged to change track as the white bishop's influence on g7 allows a tactical trick after 15 ... Wc6 16 Qd3! Qxg2? 17 Wg1 f6 18 Wh5 h6 (18 ... f5 19 f3+-; 18 ... Qe4 19 Qxe4 Wxe4 20 Wge1+-) 19 Wg6+-.

16 Qbs! Wc8

If 16 ... Qc6 White can increase the pressure by 17 Qxc6 Wxc6 18 Wc3!.

17 Whe1 Wf5

18 g4 Qg5+

19 Qe3 Wxf2

20 Wd2!

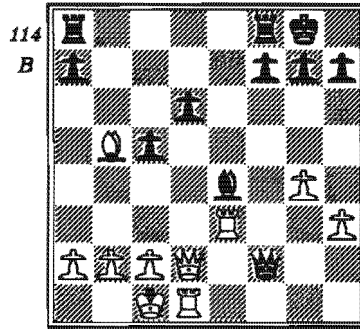
The ending offers White excellent prospects after he wins back the pawn with a finesse.

20 ... Qxe3

21 Wxe3 (114)

21 ... Wf4?

Black is understandably reluctant to enter the ending after 21 ... Wxd2+ 22 Wxd2 d5 23 Qc6 Wad8 24 c4!±; but this was



his best chance.

22 Wf1 Wg5

23 Qc6 Wab8

24 Wxe4

White captures the piece, having accurately calculated that Black's series of checks lead nowhere.

24 ... Wxb2+

25 Wd1 Wa3

26 Wd3 Wxa2

27 Qd5

Naturally, White takes steps to restrict the black forces in order to release the pressure on his own king. He identifies f7 as Black's Achilles' Heel and rapidly consolidates his position.

27 ... Wa5

28 Wg2! Wh8

29 Wxf7 Wa1

30 Wf3 Wfe8

31 Wee7

By a neat twist, defence has been turned into attack.

31 ... Wg8

32 Wxa7 Wg5+

33 Wg4 Wge8

34 Wae7 Wxe7

35 Wxe7 Wh2+

36	♖g2	♗f4
37	♗f3	♗h2+
38	♕d3	♗g1
39	♗e3	♗d1+
40	♗d2	♗f1+
41	♗e2	1-0

Conclusion

White's early divergencies are not dangerous if Black responds actively with 6 ... d5. However, if Black reacts carelessly White may be able to establish his superiority early on.

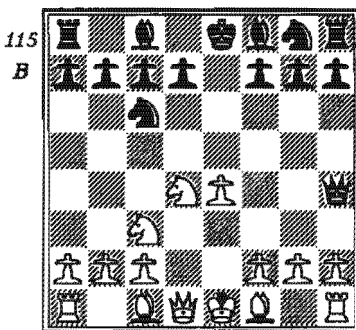
14 Steinitz Variation: 4 ... ♔h4

By far the most aggressive Black defence against the Scotch is Steinitz's 4 ... ♔h4. Black immediately counter-attacks against the white e-pawn but in doing so goes against a basic principle of opening play: do not bring your queen out too early. Despite this, Black's move is surprisingly difficult to refute, as the following games show. However, White can hope for a clear advantage if he is well prepared.

**Azmaiparashvili - Hector
San Sebastian 1991**

- | | | |
|---|------|-------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♟f3 | ♞c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♞xd4 | ♔h4 |
| 5 | ♞c3! | (115) |

This is the move which causes Black the most problems; White aims for rapid development and is not afraid of sacrificing the e4-pawn. The main alternative is 5 ♞b5 which is examined in the next illustrative game, but other moves have also been tested:



a) 5 ♞xc6?! ♔xe4+ 6 ♚e2 dxc6 7 0-0 ♚e6 8 ♞c3 (Radulov - Zuckerman, Vrsac 1973) 8 ... ♔h4! 9 ♚el ♚c5 10 g3 ♔d4.

b) 5 ♞f3?! ♔xe4+ 6 ♚e2 ♔e7! 7 ♞c3 ♞f6 8 ♚g5 ♔d8! 9 ♞d5 ♚e7 and Black is slightly better according to Evans.

c) 5 ♔d3?! ♞f6 and now:

c1) 6 ♞c3 ♚b4 7 ♞xc6 dxc6 transposes to c43.

c2) 6 ♞b5 ♔d8 7 ♞d2 ♚c5 8 g3 ♔h5 9 ♚e2 ♔g6 10 f3 d6 11 ♞b3? ♞b4 12 ♔d1 ♞xe4-+.

c3) 6 ♞d2?! ♞g4! 7 g3 ♔f6 8 ♞2f3 (8 ♞4f3 ♞ce5 9 ♔e2 ♚c5 and Black is winning according to Winter) 8 ... ♞ce5 9 ♔c3 (9 ♔b3 c5) 9 ... ♚b4 0-1 Prugel - Dyckhoff, 1930.

c4) 6 ♞xc6 dxc6 and now:

c41) 7 e5? ♞g4 8 g3 ♔h5 9 f4

♖c5?

c4) 7 ♗d2 ♖c5 8 g3 ♗h5 9 f3 ♖e6 10 ♗g2 ♗d8 11 ♗e2 0-0 12 c3 ♗fe8 13 b4 ♖b6 14 ♖b2 ♗d5!-+ Milovic - Muir, Corr 1968.

c4) 7 ♗c3 ♖b4 8 ♖d2 ♖xc3 (8 ... 0-0?) 9 ♖xc3 ♗xe4 10 ♗d4 ♗e7 11 0-0-0 ♗g5+? (11 ... ♗xc3 12 ♗xg7 ♗xa2+ 13 ♖b1 ♗f8 14 ♗xa2 with an unclear position) 12 f4! ♗xf4+ 13 ♖d2 ♗g4 14 ♗d8+! ♗xd8 15 ♖g5+ ♖e8 16 ♗d8 mate Maczuski - Kolisch, Paris 1864.

d) 5 ♖e3 ♗xe4 6 ♗d2 (for 6 ♗b5 see note to move 5 in the next main game) and now:

d) 6 ... ♗g6?! 7 ♗b5 ♗b4 8 ♗f3 ♗xc2+ 9 ♖d1 ♗xa1 10 ♖d3! ♗c6 (10 ... ♗xd3? 11 ♗xc7+ ♖d8 12 ♖g5+-) 11 ♗xc6 bxc6 12 ♗xc7+ ♖d8 13 ♗xa8+- Roth - Schleiffer, Corr 1984.

d2) 6 ... ♗e7 7 ♖e2 (7 ♗b5 d5!?) 7 ... ♗xd4? (7 ... d5!) 8 ♖xd4 ♗f6 9 0-0 ♗d8 10 ♗e1 ♖e7 11 ♖d3 0-0 12 ♗e2 and the bishops are a potent attacking force, Krutikhin - Ishmbaev, Kirgistan Ch 1957.

e) 5 ♗f5?! ♗xe4+ 6 ♗e3 ♗f6 7 ♖d3 ♗h4 (7 ... ♗e5!?) 8 0-0 d5 9 ♖f5 ♖e6 10 ♗e1 0-0-0? Delmar - Steinitz, New York 1894.

5 ... ♖b4

6 ♖e2

White has no sensible means of defending the e-pawn so elects to sacrifice it for active play. Also possible is 6 ♗b5 ♗xe4+ 7 ♖e2 transposing to the

main line, but not worth serious consideration is 6 ♗f3?! ♗xe4+ 7 ♖e2 ♗f6 8 0-0 ♖xc3 9 bxc3 0-0 10 ♗g5 ♗e5 11 ♗d3 d6 12 f4 ♗a5 13 f5 ♖d7? Hadjitofi - Levy, Siegen Ol 1970.

6 ... ♗xe4

It hardly makes sense for Black not to take the pawn immediately:

a) 6 ... ♗f6?! 7 0-0 ♖xc3 8 ♗f5! (8 bxc3 ♗xe4 9 ♖d3 ♗xd4 10 cxd4 d5 11 ♖a3 ♖e6 12 c4 ½-½ Thorhallsson - Mitkov, Cappelle la Grande 1993) 8 ... ♗xe4 9 ♖d3 ♗g4 10 f3 ♗a4 11 bxc3 0-0 12 ♗xg7! ♖xg7 13 ♖h6+ ♖h8 (13 ... ♖xh6 14 ♗d2+ ♖g7 15 ♗g5+ ♖h8 16 ♗xf6+ ♖g8 17 ♗g5+ ♖h8 18 ♗h6+-) 14 ♖xf8 d6 15 ♗d2 ♗h4 16 ♖h6 ♗g8 17 ♖g5 ♗a4 18 c4 ♗a5 19 ♗f4 ♗e5 20 ♖f6+ ♗xf6 21 ♗xf6+ ♖g8 22 ♗g5+ 1-0 Vukovic - Mozetic, Yugoslav Ch 1992.

b) 6 ... ♗e7 7 0-0 ♖xc3 8 bxc3 ♗xd4 9 ♗xd4 d6 10 f4 0-0 11 ♖b1 ♗c6 12 ♗d3 ♖b8 13 ♖b5 ♗e7 14 ♖g5 f6 15 ♖h5 f5 16 ♖f3 ♗f6 17 h3 h6 18 g4 fxg4 19 hxg4 ♗g6 20 g5 hxg5 21 ♖xg5 ♗h6 22 ♖h5 ♗g6+ 23 ♖g5 ♗h6 24 ♖f2 ♖e6 25 ♖fg2 ♖f7 26 ♖h2 ♗f6 27 e5! ♗xe5 28 ♗h7+ ♖f8 29 ♖xe5 dxe5 30 ♗h8+ ♖e7 31 ♖a3+ c5 32 ♖xc5+ ♖d7 33 ♗xb8+- H. Olafsson - Hector, Copenhagen 1992.

7 ♗b5 ♗f6

Until recently, attention has focused on 7 ... ♖xc3+ 8 ♗xc3 ♗d4 (8 ... ♗e7!? with the idea of

9 ♖b5 ♗d8) 9 ♖d3 ♖b4 10 0-0!
 ♖xd3 11 ♖b5 ♗c4 12 ♗xd3 ♗xd3
 13 cxd3 ♗d8 14 ♖f4 d6 15 ♗ac1
 ♖d7 16 ♖xc7 ♗c8 when the
 position is equal according to
 Harding and Botterill, but it is
 more logical for White to
 deprive his opponent of castling
 rights with 8 bxc3! ♗d8 9 0-0
 ♗e7 10 ♖d3 (10 ♖f3!?) 10 ...
 ♗h4 11 ♗e1 f5 12 ♖a3 ♗f6 13 ♗d2
 a6 14 ♖d4± De Greef - Lane,
 Wijk aan Zee 1992. Black's
 innovation offers the queen's
 rook in return for an attack.

8 0-0!

White sensibly declines the
 proffered material and concen-
 trates on his development.
 Instead, 8 ♖xc7+ ♗d8 9 ♖xa8
 ♗xg2 (9 ... ♖d4 10 0-0 ♖xc3 11
 ♖d3+-) 10 ♖f3 ♗e8+ 11 ♖e3 ♗h3
 12 ♖xc6 bxc6 (12 ... ♗xe3+? 13
 fxe3 ♗xe3+ 14 ♗e2 ♖xc3+ 15
 bxc3 ♗xc3+ 16 ♗f2±) 13 ♗e2
 ♖d5 14 0-0-0 ♖xe3 15 fxe3
 ♗xe3+ 16 ♗xe3 ♗xe3 leaves an
 unclear position according to
 Azmaiparashvili.

8 ... ♖xc3

9 bxc3

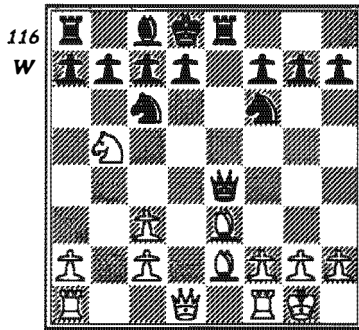
Normally White would avoid
 saddling himself with doubled
 pawns in this fashion, but here
 they give White attacking
 options on the b-file while the
 important d4-square is con-
 trolled. If instead the pawn
 structure is kept intact, White's
 momentum would peter out: 9
 ♖xc3!? ♗d4! 10 ♖b5 ♗xd1 11
 ♗xd1 ♗d8 12 ♖f4 d6 with an

unclear position.

9 ... ♗d8

10 ♖e3 ♗e8 (116)

The best chance for Black
 was to activate the queenside
 rook by 10 ... d6, ... ♖e6, ... ♗d7
 and ... ♗ae8, although he must
 always be wary of a disruptive
 sacrifice on d6. If Black tries to
 dislodge the powerful knight
 from b5 then he runs into
 trouble: 10 ... a6 11 ♖f3 (11 ♖d6?!
 ♗e6 12 ♖xc8 ♗xc8 with a very
 slight edge to White) 11 ... ♗e5
 12 ♖d4 ♖xd4 13 ♖xd4 and
 White is better according to
 Azmaiparashvili.



11 ♗e1 ♗d5

12 ♗c1

It is essential for White to
 avoid an exchange of queens in
 order to maintain his attacking
 chances.

12 ... ♗f5

13 ♗a3 d6

14 ♗ad1

White has successfully
 managed to activate the whole
 of his army whilst Black's
 forces remain largely dormant.
 A sacrifice on d6 is now firmly

on the horizon.

14 ... ♖e7

15 c4

White now begins to batter Black's defensive bastions; the immediate threat is 16 c5.

15 ... ♕e6

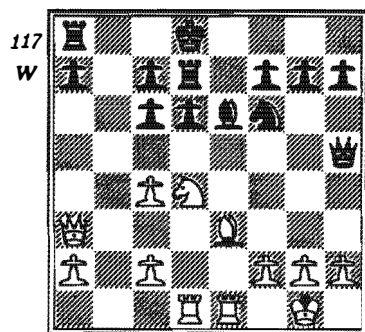
16 ♕f3!

Black had prepared 16 c5 d5 17 c4 ♖d7 with a firm defensive barrier but White does not allow him this. Clearly Black cannot accept the pawn sacrifice: 16 ... ♕xc4 17 ♖xd6 cxd6 18 ♕xc6 bxc6 (18 ... d5 19 ♕b6+) 19 ♖xd6+ ♖d7 (19 ... ♖d7 20 ♕b6+ axb6 21 ♖xe7+-; 19 ... ♖d7 20 ♖f8+ ♖c7 21 ♖xa8+-) 20 ♕b6+ axb6 21 ♖xe7 ♕e6 (21 ... ♕d5 22 c4) 22 ♖xd7+ ♕xd7 23 ♖f8+ ♖c7 24 ♖xa8+-.

16 ... ♖d7

17 ♕xc6 bxc6

18 ♖d4 ♖h5 (117)



19 ♕g5!!

A brilliant stroke which places Black in grave difficulties. If now 19 ... ♖xg5 20 ♖xe6 ♖c5 21 ♖a6 ♖xd4 22 ♖xd4 fxe6 23 ♖xc6 ♖b8 24 h3 wins for White. Black could have

wriggled on after the less forcing 19 ♖xc6+ ♖e8 20 ♖d4 ♖e7±.

19 ... c5

20 ♕xf6+ gxf6

21 ♖c6+ ♖e8

22 ♖b2

White is ready to penetrate via b7 or f6.

22 ... ♖h4

23 ♖b7 ♖ad8

24 ♖d3! 1-0

In this hopeless position Black resigned. One possible finish is 24 ... ♖xc4 25 ♖g3 ♖f8 26 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 27 ♖xc7 ♖d7 28 ♖b8+ ♖e7 29 ♖g8 f5 30 ♖f8+ ♖f6 31 ♖g7+ ♖e7 32 ♖g5+ f6 33 ♖g7 mate.

Instead of 5 ♖c3 White often tries 5 ♖b5, but Black has more defensive resources in this instance, as the next game shows.

Milu - Dumitrache Romania 1991

1 e4 e5

2 ♖f3 ♖c6

3 d4 exd4

4 ♖xd4 ♖h4

5 ♖b5 ♕c5 (118)

Black has two main alternatives:

✓ a) 5 ... ♖xe4?! and now:

✓ a1) 6 ♕e2 ♖d8 7 O-O a6 8 ♖lc3 ♖e5 9 ♖d5! ♖f6 (9 ... axb5 10 ♖f4 ♖xb2 11 ♖xc7+ ♖e8 12 ♖b6 ♖a3 13 ♖el ♕e7 14 ♖xb5 ♖f8 15 ♖xa8 ♖xa8 16 ♖d6! ♖a5

17 ♖xc6 bxc6 18 ♖xe7+ ♗xe7 19 ♗d6 ♗g5 20 ♗c7+ 10 ♗bxc7 ♗d4 11 ♖f3 ♗xd5 12 ♗xd5 ♗e6 13 ♖e1 ♗d4 14 ♗e2 ♖d6 15 ♖e3 ♗xb2 16 ♖ab1 ♗xa2 17 ♗c3 ♗a3 18 ♖b3 ♖xh2+ 19 ♗xh2 ♗d6+ 20 ♗g1 1-0 Herbert - Biyiasis, Canadian Ch 1978.

a2) 6 ♖e3 and now:

a21) 6 ... ♖b4+? 7 ♗d2 ♖xd2+ 8 ♗xd2 ♗d8 9 0-0-0 ♗e6 10 ♖f4 d6 11 ♖xd6! cxd6 12 ♗xd6 ♗xa2 13 ♗b5+ ♗e8 14 ♗c7+ ♗f8 15 ♗d6+ ♗ge7 16 ♗d8+ ♗xd8 17 ♖xd8 mate, Grimshaw - Steinitz, London 1890.

a22) 6 ... ♗e5! 7 ♗d2 d5 8 ♗f3 ♗e7 9 ♗xd5 ♖e6 10 ♗e4?! (10 ♗d2!?) 10 ... ♗f6 11 ♗h4 a6 12 ♗c3 ♗b4 13 ♖c1 0-0-0 O'Hanlon - Mikenas, Buenos Aires 1939.

✓ b) 5 ... ♖b4+ 6 ♖d2 and now:

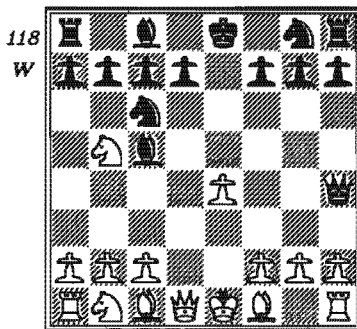
✓ b1) 6 ... ♗xe4+ 7 ♖e2 ♗xg2? (7 ... ♗d8!?) 8 ♖f3 ♖xd2+ 9 ♗xd2 ♗h3 10 ♖xc6 bxc6 11 ♗xc7+ ♗d8 12 ♗xa8+- Gallagher - Costa, Berne 1991.

✓ b2) 6 ... ♖c5! 7 ♗e2 d6 8 g3 when Black has:

✓ b21) 8 ... ♗d8 9 ♖e3 ♖xe3 10 ♗xe3 ♗f6 11 ♗c3 0-0 12 0-0-0 ♖e8 13 ♖g2 ♖d7 14 h3 a6 15 ♗d4 ♗xd4 16 ♗xd4 ♖c6 ½-½ Barbero - Wells, Graz 1991.

✓ b22) 8 ... ♗e7 9 ♗c3 ♗f6 10 ♗d5 ♗xd5 11 exd5 ♗e5 12 h3 a6 13 ♗xc7+ ♗xc7 14 f4 0-0 15 fxe5 ♖e8 16 ♖c3 ♖b4! 17 ♖xb4 ♖xe5 18 0-0-0 ♖xe2 19 ♖xe2 ♗b6 20 ♖c3 ♗e3+ 21 ♖d2 ♖f5 22 g4 ♖xc2 23 ♖f1 ♖g6 24 h4 ♖c8

25 ♖f3 b5 26 ♗d1 b4 27 ♖d4 ♖c2+ 28 ♖xc2 ♗d3+ 29 ♖d2 ♗xf1 mate 0-1 Wiede - Wells, London 1989.



6 ♗e2

White can also prevent the mate by 6 ♗f3 when Black has:

a) 6 ... ♗f6?! 7 ♗xc7+ ♗d8 8 ♗xa8 ♖e8! 9 ♖d3 ♗xe4 10 ♖xe4 ♖xe4+ 11 ♗f1 ♗d4 12 ♗d3 ♗b3 13 ♖e3 ♖xe3 14 fxe3 ♗xa1 15 ♗d2 ♖a4 16 ♗e2+-.

b) 6 ... ♗d4 and now:

b1) 7 ♗xc7+ ♗d8 8 ♗f4 ♗xc2+ 9 ♗d1 ♗xf4 10 ♖xf4 ♗xa1 (10 ... d6 11 ♗xc2 ♗xc7 12 ♗c3 ♖e6 13 ♖c1 ♗e7 14 ♗b1 ♗c6 with an unclear position) 11 ♗xa8 d6 12 ♖c4 ♖e6 13 ♖xe6 fxe6 14 ♗c3 ♗d7 15 f3 ♗e7 16 ♗d2 ♗b3+ 17 axb3 ♖xa8 when Black is slightly better according to Novoselski.

b2) 7 ♗xd4 ♖xd4 8 c3 ♖b6 9 ♗d2 (9 ♖e3!?) 9 ... d6 10 h3 a6 11 ♗c4 ♖a7 12 ♖e3 ♖xe3 13 ♗xe3 ♗f6 14 ♖d3 0-0 15 0-0 ♖e6 16 ♗d2 ♖ae8 17 f4 ♗d7 18 ♖ae1=.

6 ... ♗f6

Black aims for a rapid deployment of his kingside pieces,

hoping to exploit the position of the white queen by ... ♖e8. Also possible is 6 ... ♗d4 7 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 8 c3 ♗b6 9 g3 ♗e7 10 ♗g2=.

7 ♗e3! ♗b4+

8 ♗d2 ♗a5

With the manoeuvre 7 ... ♗b4+ 8 ♗d2 ♗a5 Black has avoided having to displace his king with ... ♗d8, but at the cost of several tempi.

9 0-0-0 a6

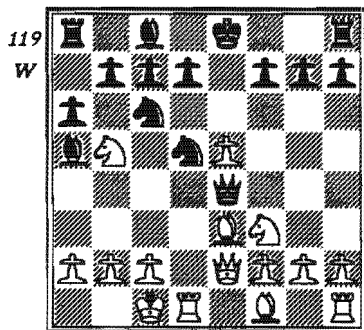
10 e5 ♗d5

11 ♗f3 ♗e4 (119)

Black should prefer 11 ... ♗a4 as the text move loses time, for example:

a) 12 ♗xd5 ♗xa2! (12 ... axb5 is given in most sources) 13 ♗xc7+ (13 ♗c3 ♗xc3) 13 ... ♗xc7-+.

b) 12 ♗a3! ♗xe3 (12 ... ♗db4 13 ♗c4) 13 ♗xe3 0-0 (13 ... ♗b4 14 ♗b3) 14 ♗c4±.



12 ♗g5! ♗a4

13 ♗f3

Black's careless eleventh move has allowed White his own attack.

13 ... 0-0

14 ♗xd5 axb5

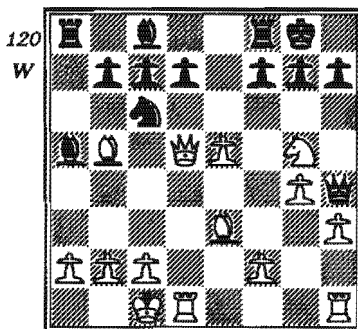
15 ♗xb5 ♗g4

16 h3

Now the black queen is being chased all over the board as White gains time.

16 ... ♗h5

17 g4 ♗h4 (120)



18 ♗c4 ♗d8

19 ♗f3 ♗e7

20 ♗c5

Black's position collapses.

20 ... d6

21 exd6 ♗f6

22 d7 ♗xd7

23 ♗xd7 ♗f4+

24 ♗b1 ♗xc4

25 ♗xf8 ♗xf8

26 ♗e5 ♗a6

27 ♗f5 ♗d2

28 a3 g6

29 ♗d7+ ♗g8

30 ♗e4 1-0

Conclusion

Whilst the Steinitz Variation can be dangerous for White if he reacts ^{carelessly} carelessly, ^{accurate} accurate play should enable him to claim an advantage with 5 ♗c3!.

15 Other Black Defences

This section deals with rare fourth moves for Black. The early queen sortie 4 ... ♖f6 is inferior to the Steinitz Variation as Black does not create any pressure against the e-pawn, while 4 ... g6, planning a king-side fianchetto, is too slow if White reacts energetically with queenside castling and a king-side attack.

Narodizky - Kempster Moscow 1990

- | | | |
|---|------|-------------|
| 1 | e4 | e5 |
| 2 | ♗f3 | ♗c6 |
| 3 | d4 | exd4 |
| 4 | ♗xd4 | ♖f6!? (121) |

With this move order Black hopes to transpose to the 4 ♗c5 5 ♗e3 ♖f6 lines having avoided 5 ♗b3 and 5 ♗f5. The immediate exchange on d4 allows White's queen to take up a dominating post in the centre, from which it is difficult for Black to dislodge, i.e. 4 ... ♗xd4 5 ♖xd4 and now:

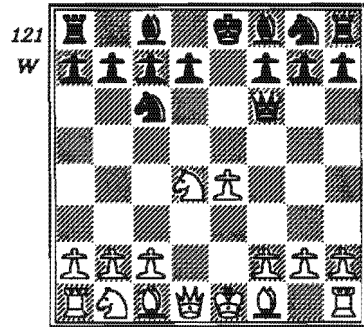
a) 5 ... ♗e7 6 ♗c4 ♗c6 7 ♖d5 (7 ♖e3!?) 7 ... ♖f6 (Edinburgh - London [5] 1826/28) 8 0-0! and White is slightly better accord-

ing to Lewis.

b) 5 ... ♖e7 6 ♗c3 c6 7 ♗e3 ♖d6?! 8 0-0-0 ♖xd4 9 ♗xd4 b6 10 ♗c4 ♗b7 11 a3 ♗e7 12 ♗e5 f5 13 exf5 ♗xf5 14 ♖h1 ♗e7 15 g4 1-0 W. Hoogerwerf - Gischer, Virton 1992.

c) 5 ... d6 6 ♗c3 ♗f6 7 ♗g5 ♗e7 8 0-0-0 ♗e6 9 f4± Gobet - Nemet, Swiss Ch 1988.

d) 5 ... ♖f6 6 e5 ♖c6 7 ♗c3 ♗e7 8 ♗d3 ♗g6 9 ♗e3 ♗e7 10 0-0-0 0-0 11 h4 ♖e6 12 f4 c5 13 ♖e4 f5 14 exf6 ♖xe4 15 ♗xe4 ♗xf6 16 ♗c4+ ♖h8 17 ♗xc5 ♗e7 18 g3 b6 19 ♗xe7 ♗xe7 20 ♗d6 h6 21 ♖h1 ♗c6 22 b3 a5 23 ♗xc8 ♖axc8 24 ♖xd7 1-0 De Greef - Veloso, Novi Sad Ol 1990.



5 ♗b3

White cuts across Black's

idea of transposing to the Classical Variation after 5 Qe3 Qc5 with this solid move. White can also play the aggressive 5 Qb5 with similarities to the Steinitz Variation:

a) 5 ... Qb4+ 6 Qc3 Qxc3+ 7 Qxc3 Qe7 8 Qe3 a6 9 Qd2 d6 10 0-0-0± Botterill - R. Miles, Welsh Ch.

b) 5 ... Qc5 6 Qe2 Qb6 7 Qc3 Qe7 8 Qe3 and now:

b1) 8 ... 0-0? 9 Qxb6 axb6 10 Qxc7 Ra5 11 Qf3 Qg6 12 Qd3 Rh5 13 Q7d5 Rh6 14 0-0-0± Bednarski - Lombardy, Students Ol 1964.

b2) 8...a6 9 Qxb6 axb5 10 Qxc7 b4 (Zhdanov - Zhuravlev, Riga 1969) 11 e5! which gives White an advantage according to Keres.

b3) 8 ... Qd8 9 0-0-0 a6 10 Qa3 Qxe3+ 11 Qxe3 b5 12 Qd5 Qxd5 13 exd5 Re8 14 Qg3 Qd4 15 d6! cxd6 16 c3 and the stranded black king gives White the better chances, Borkowski - Meinsohn, Groningen 1974/75.

b4) 8 ... Qa5 and now:

b41) 9 Qd2 a6 10 Qd4 Qxd4 11 Qxd4 Qg6 12 0-0-0 0-0 13 Qf4 d6 14 Qd3 f6 15 Qg3 Qf7 16 Qd5 Qg6= Bruk - Flear, Tel Aviv 1989.

b42) 9 0-0-0 0-0 (9 ... a6!? 10 Qd4 Qxc3 11 bxc3 and White is slightly better according to Boleslavsky and Kapengut or 10 Qd5 Qxd5 11 exd5 axb5 12 Qd4+ Qe7 13 dxc6 dxc6! 14 Qxe7+ Qxe7 15 Qxg7 Qg8 16 Qd4

Qb6= Kuprechik - Nei, USSR 1975) 10 Qd5 Qxd5 11 exd5 Qe7 12 d6! cxd6 13 Qxd6 Qe5 14 Qxa7 Qf4+ 15 Qe3 Qxe3+ 16 Qxe3 Qf5 17 Qd3 Qxe3 18 fxe3 d5 19 a3 and White is a clear pawn up, Chiburdanidze - Miles, Palma 1989.

White also has two less forcing variations: 5 Qf3 Qc5 6 Qc3 Qe7 7 Qg5 Qg6 8 h4 f6 9 h5 Qf7 10 Qf4 Qb4 11 Qxc7 d5 12 Qd3 Qg4 13 Qg5! fxc5 14 Qxg4 d4 15 a3 dxc3 16 axb4 cxb2 17 Qb1 with an unclear position, Klovan - Ivanov, USSR 1975; and 5 Qxc6 after which Black can either transpose to the 4 ... Qc5 5 Qxc6 Qf6 lines (see chapter 6) with 5 ... Qc5 or try the independent 5 ... dxc6 6 Qc4 Qd6 7 Qc3 Qe7 8 f4 Qe6 9 Qxe6 (9 e5? Qxe5!) 9 ... Qxe6 10 0-0 f5 11 Qd4 fxe4 12 Qxe4 Qf7 13 Qf3= Smagin - Hector, Valby 1991.

5 ... Qg6

Black targets e4 and makes room for the knight to come to f6. White has generally done well after 5 ... Qb4+ due to the exposed position of the black queen: 6 c3 Qe7 7 g3 Qe6 8 Qg2 f5 9 0-0 fxe4 10 Qe1 Qf6 11 Qf4 0-0 12 Qd2 d5 13 f3± Belousov - Klaman USSR 1970.

6 Qe2

This serves a dual purpose of defending e4 and clearing the way to castle queenside. Of the alternatives, the most interesting possibility is to

ignore the threat to the e4-pawn and concentrate on rapid development:

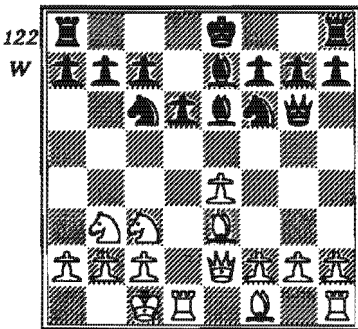
a) 6 $\text{Qe2!?$ Qf6 7 0-0 d6 8 Qc3 Qe7 9 f3 0-0 10 Qe3 Re8 11 Qc1! Qe5 12 Qd3 Qxd3 13 cxd3 Qd7 14 d4 c6 15 Qh1 h6 16 $\text{Qd3}\pm$
Neiboolt - Rakitin, Corr 1978.

b) 6 Qf3 Qf6 7 Qd2 Qe7 8 Qb5 0-0 9 0-0 d5= Garcia Padron - Tsheskovsky, Las Palmas 1976.

6 ... d6
7 Qc3 Qe6
8 Qe3

White continues with an easy plan of development involving queenside castling, realising that his opponent has a long-term problem in that his kingside is rather congested, whilst his queen is already looking misplaced.

8 ... Qe7
9 0-0-0 Qf6 (122)



10 f3!

Now e4 is secured and Black cannot consider 10 ... 0-0 as this would walk into an advance of the white g- and h-pawns.

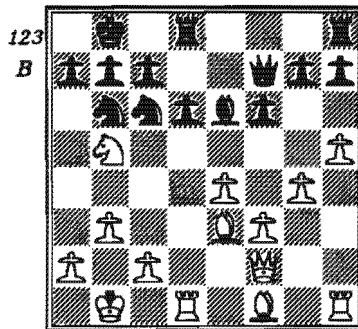
10 ... Qd7
11 Qb1 Qb6
12 Qf2 0-0-0
13 Qd5

It is standard practice in such positions to station the knight on d5 and White quickly takes the opportunity of 'winning' the two bishops.

13 ... Qd7
14 Qxe7+ Qxe7
15 h4 f6

Black has adopted a passive stance and is relying on White to overstretch, but this is a dangerous policy and he should at least have tried 15 ... f5.

16 Qd4 Qb8
17 b3 Qc6
18 h5 Qf7
19 Qb5 Qe6
20 g4 (123)



White is in total command of the board. His pawns severely limit the range of the opposing pieces and he can gradually build up the pressure using his space advantage. The knight on b5 is an immediate cause of concern for Black as it offers White several attacking

options and cannot be removed by ... a6 due to ♖xc7!.

20 ... ♖he8
21 c4 ♖c8
22 ♖c3 ♖e5
23 ♖b5

White realises that 23 ♖d5 is met by 23 ... c6 and resorts to a slower approach, since Black has no active play.

23 ... ♖c6
24 ♖d3 ♖g8
25 ♖d4 ♖xd4
26 ♖xd4 h6

Black obviously feared 27 h6 to open the h-file and undermine his kingside pawns.

27 ♖c2 b6
28 ♖hg1 ♖e7
29 f4

The wave of pawns advance and Black has no way of stopping them.

29 ... ♖f8
30 ♖g3 ♖g8
31 g5 ♖e7
32 ♖c3 ♖f7
33 ♖e3 ♖c8
34 b4!

Now that Black has been tied down on the kingside another avenue of attack is opened up with dramatic effect.

34 ... ♖b7
35 gxh6 ♖xh6
36 c5 dxc5
37 bxc5 ♖fd7?
38 ♖xd7 1-0

Black resigned in view of 38 ... ♖xd7 39 c6+.

Now we turn to 4 ... g6.

Makarichev - Tukmakov Palma 1989

1 e4 e5
2 ♖f3 ♖c6
3 d4 exd4
4 ♖xd4 g6!?

The starting point of an unusual variation which has close similarities to the Pirc Defence. A variety of obscure moves has also been tested at this stage:

a) 4 ... ♖b4+!? 5 c3 ♖e7 6 ♖xc6 bxc6 7 ♖d3 d6 8 0-0 ♖f6 9 ♖d2 0-0 10 ♖a4 c5 11 ♖e1 ♖e8 12 ♖f1 ♖d7 13 ♖c2 ♖c6 14 b4 cxb4 15 cxb4 ♖d7 16 ♖b2 a5 17 a3 $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$ van der Wiel - Tal, Brussels 1987.

b) 4 ... d5? 5 ♖xc6 bxc6 exd5 ♖b4+ (6 ... ♖xd5 7 ♖e2+ and 8 ♖c3 with advantage to White) 7 c3 ♖c5 8 ♖e2+ (8 dxc6?? ♖xf2+-+) 8 ... ♖e7 9 dxc6 0-0 10 ♖c4 ♖d6 11 ♖e2 ♖xc6 12 0-0 and White is a clear pawn up, A. Osborne - Bloodworth, Torquay 1985.

c) 4 ... d6 and now 5 ♖c4± transposes to a Hungarian Defence and 5 ♖b5± to a line of the Ruy Lopez, both of which are outside the scope of this book.

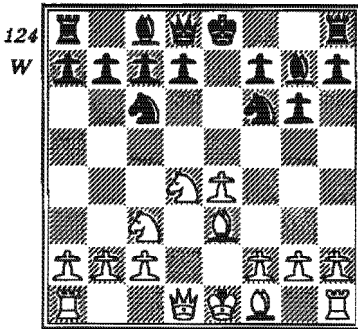
5 ♖c3

Evans has suggested 5 c4!? to clamp down on the centre by preventing a later ... d5.

5 ... ♖g7
6 ♖e3 ♖f6 (124)

When Karpov tested this

variation he chose a slightly different set-up in this position: 6 ... d6 7 ♗d2 ♠f6 8 0-0-0 (8 ♖b5 ♗d7 9 ♗xc6 bxc6 10 ♖h6 0-0= Karasev - Geller, USSR 1971) 8 ... ♠g4 9 ♠xc6 (9 ♗g5!?) 9 ... bxc6 10 ♖d4 ♗xd4 11 ♗xd4 ♗f6= 12 f3 ♗xd4 13 ♖xd4 ♠e3 14 ♠d1 ♠xd1 15 ♗xd1 with equal chances. A more convincing line for White is 7 ♖e2? ♠f6 8 ♠xc6 bxc6 9 e5 dxe5 10 ♗xd8+ ♗xd8 11 0-0-0+ ♗e8 12 ♖f3 ♖d7 13 ♖he1 ♗f8 14 ♖c5+ ♗g8 15 ♖xe5 h5 16 ♖e7 ♖b8 17 ♖c5 ♠d5 18 ♗xd5 cxd5 19 ♖xc7+- S. Arkell - G. Flear, Hastings 1989/90.



7 ♗d2

The sharpest method of play aiming for a rapid kingside attack. Other moves are slower and tend to justify Black's opening choice:

a) 7 g3 0-0 8 ♖g2 d6 9 h3 ♠e5!- Savon - Ree, Suhumi 1972

b) 7 f3 and now:

b1) 7 ... 0-0 8 g4 ♖e8 9 g5 ♠h5 10 ♠de2 ♠e5 11 ♠g3 ♠xg3 12 hxg3 d5 13 ♠xd5 c6 14 ♠f6+

♗xf6 15 gx6 ♗xf6 16 ♖g2 ♠c4 17 ♗d4± Bellon - Mariotti, Rome 1977.

b2) 7 ... ♠e7! 8 ♖c4 d5 9 exd5 ♠fxd5 10 ♠xd5 ♠xd5 ♠Zukertort - Steinitz, Vienna 1882.

c) 7 ♖e2 0-0 8 ♗d2?! (8 0-0 ♖e8 9 ♠xc6 bxc6 10 ♖f3 ♖b7 12 ♗d2 d6= Bagirov - Keres, Moscow 1963) 8 ... ♖e8 9 f3 d5! 10 ♠xc6 bxc6 11 exd5 ♠xd5 12 ♠xd5 cxd5 13 c3 (13 0-0-0?? ♗e7-+; 13 ♖g5 ♗d6 14 0-0? ♗e5-+) 13 ... c5 14 0-0 d4 15 ♖f2 (15 cxd4 ♖xe3!) 15 ... ♗a5 16 ♖fc1 ♖f5 17 ♖c4 ♖ad8 18 ♗g5 dxc3 19 bxc3 ♖xc3 20 ♖xc3 ♗xc3 21 ♖c1 ♗b2 22 ♖el h6! 0-1 Rossetto - Keres, Mar del Plata 1957.

d) 7 ♖c4 and now:

d1) 7 ... 0-0 8 ♠xc6 (8 0-0 ♖e8 9 ♖el d6 10 f3 a6= Hort - Keres, Moscow 1963) 8 ... bxc6 9 e5?! ♠e8 10 e6 fxe6 11 ♖xe6+ ♗h8 ♠ Prameshuber - Keres, Munich Ol 1958.

d2) 7 ... d6 8 f3 0-0 9 ♗d2 ♠e5 10 ♖e2 (10 ♖b3!- ECO) 10 ... d5! 11 f4 ♠eg4 12 e5 ♠xe3 13 ♗xe3 c5! ♠ Corden - Littlewood, Hastings 1969/70.

e) 7 ♠xc6!? bxc6 8 e5 ♠g8 9 ♖d4! ♗e7 10 ♗e2 f6 11 exf6 ♠xf6 and White has a slight edge according to Keres.

7 ... 0-0

Instead 7 ... d6 8 0-0-0 ♠g4 transposes to Bellon - Karpov, (see note to Black's sixth move).

8 0-0-0

Another aggressive choice is

8 f3 d5 9 ♖xc6 bxc6 10 0-0-0
 ♚e6 11 ♚h6! ♜b8 12 ♗xg7 ♝xg7
 13 ♜e3 ♜e7 14 exd5 cxd5 15
 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 16 ♜xd5 ♜f6 17 ♜e5
 ♜fd8 18 ♚e2+- Radulov - Plan-
 inc, Wijk aan Zee 1974.

8 ... ♖xd4

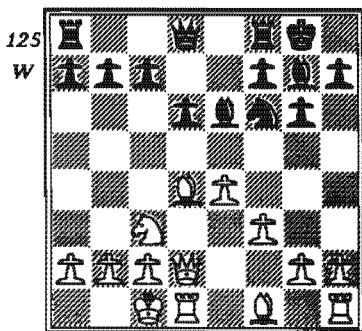
Black wishes to push forward the queenside pawns, so this trade on d4 is an essential preliminary measure. The attempt to exchange the bishop on e3 fails after 8 ... ♖g4 9 ♗g5 f5 (9 ... ♖f6!? 10 ♗xf6 ♜xf6 11 f3 ♜xd4 12 ♜xd4 ♖xd4 13 ♜xd4 ♖f6 [13 ... ♖e3 14 ♖b5 c6 15 ♖c7±] 14 e5 ♖e8 15 ♖e4 intending ♗c4±) 10 ♖f4 ♖xd4 11 ♜xd4 f5 12 ♜c4+ ♜h8 13 ♗xc7 ♜f6 14 ♜e2 and White has the edge according to Makarichev.

9 ♗xd4 d6

10 f3

It should be noted that this position can also arrive from a Pirc move order, i.e. 1 e4 d6 2 d4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 ♚e3 ♗g7 5 ♜d2 0-0 6 0-0-0 ♖c6 7 f3 e5 8 ♖ge2 exd4 9 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 10 ♗xd4.

10 ... ♚e6 (125)



11 g4

This is intended to prevent Black's freeing move ... d5 which would not be met by g5 when the knight must withdraw its support. The text also allows White to consider h4 as the blockading ... h5 would now be too hazardous. Also possible is 11 ♚e3 ♜e8 12 ♗g5 ♜e7 (12 ... c6?! 13 e5 dxe5 14 ♜xd8 ♜cxd8 15 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 16 ♖e4+-) 13 g4 ♜f8 14 ♜b1 a6 15 h4 with a powerful attack, Chernin - Zaichik, Lvov 1987.

11 ... c5

12 ♚e3

Now White has a straightforward plan of 13 h4, h5, hxg6 ♗h6, ♗xg7 and the ♜h6 when the white pieces invade with devastating consequences. Black therefore has to create counterplay as quickly as possible.

12 ... ♜a5

13 ♗h6!

White must continue actively since 13 ♜b1?! (to defend a2) simply moves the king into danger after 13 ... b5 14 ♗xb5 ♗xa2+! opening up lines against the monarch. After 13 ♗h6 the pawn is poisoned: 13 ... ♗xa2 14 ♖xa2 ♜xa2 15 ♗xg7 ♝xg7 16 ♜c3!+-.

13 ... ♗xh6

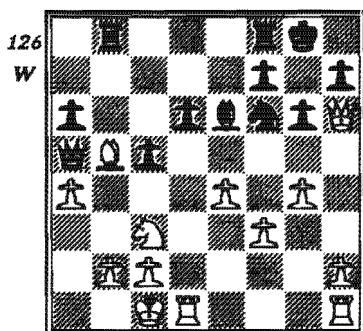
14 ♜xh6 b5!?

There is a sense of urgency in Black's game since the capture on a2 fails: 14 ... ♗xa2?! 15 h4 ♚e6 16 h5 ♜a1+ 17 ♜d2 ♜xb2

18 ♖b1 ♗a3 19 hxg6 fxg6 20 g5
 ♕h5 21 ♖xh5+-.

15 ♖xb5 ♠ab8

16 a4 a6 (126)



17 ♖xd6!

A remarkable idea; White gives up a piece in order to remove the defensive knight from f6. Less forcing play would allow Black to escape:

a) 17 ♖e2? ♖xb2 18 ♖xb2 ♖b8+ 19 ♖c1 ♗xc3 and Black has good attacking chances.

b) 17 e5?! dxе5 18 g5 ♕h5 19 ♕e4 ♖h8! with an unclear position according to Makarichev.

17 ... axb5

18 e5 ♕xg4

The full force of the sacrifice is revealed after 18 ... ♕e8 19 ♕e4 (with the idea of 20 ♕f6+) 19 ... f5 20 ♕g5+-.

19 fxg4 ♗b4!

The queen simultaneously prevents ♕e4 and opens up the possibility of 20 ... bxa4 with active play on the b-file.

20 a5 ♗xg4

21 ♠e1 ♗f5

Black is hanging on by a

thread; 22 ♕e4 can be met by 22 ... ♗xe5 which covers the vital f6-square.

22 ♗h4 b4

23 ♕e4 h5

25 ♠d2!

This clever switch threatens to bring the rook onto the vulnerable f-file.

24 ... ♖g7!

25 ♗f6+ ♖h6

26 ♕xc5 ♠b5

27 ♕xe6 fxе6

28 ♗xf5 ♠xf5?!

Black has defended excellently, but still faces a difficult endgame due to the outside passed pawn on a5. A better chance to confuse matters lay in 28 ... exf5 when the advance of the f-pawn must be considered, e.g. 28 ... exf5 29 a6 f4! 30 ♠d6 (30 e6 ♠a5! 31 ♠d6 f3 with an unclear position) when White threatens 31 ♠g1±.

29 a6 ♠fxe5

30 ♠xe5 ♠xe5

31 ♠d6 ♖g5

32 c4! ♖h4

If instead 32 ... bxc3 33 b4 and the duo of passed pawns race through to promotion.

33 ♖c2 ♖h3

34 ♖b3 ♖xh2

35 ♖xb4 ♠e1

36 a7 ♠a1

37 ♠d2+! 1-0

Black resigned in view of 37 ... ♖g3 38 ♠d3+ ♖g2 39 ♠a3+-; or 37 ... ♖g1 38 ♠d1+! ♠xd1 39 a8(♗)+-. A well calculated game by Makarichev.

Conclusion

None of the variations considered in this chapter promise Black an equal game. However, White still needs to be pre-

pared to meet them as they might be tried by an opponent wishing to avoid the well analysed 4 ... ♖c5, 4 ... ♗f6 and 4 ... ♗h4.

Index of Variations

1 e4 e5
 2 ♟f3 ♟c6
 3 d4 cxd4
 4 ♟xd4

- A) 4 ... ♟c5
- B) 4 ... ♟f6
- C) 4 ... ♟h4

4 ... ♟xd4 134; 4 ... ♟f6 134; 4 ... g6 137; 4 ... ♟b4+ 137; 4 ... d5 137;
 4 ... d6 137

A)

4 ... ♟c5
 5 ♟e3

5 ♟xc6 ♟f6 6 ♟d2 (6 ♟f3 61; 6 ♟e2 61; 6 f4 61) 6 ... bxc6 (6 ... dxc6
 62; 6 ... ♟xc6 62) 7 ♟d3 62
 5 ♟f5 g6 (5 ... d5 54; 5 ... d6 55; 5 ... ♟f6 57) 6 ♟e3 55
 5 ♟b3 ♟b6 (5 ... ♟b4+ 50; 5 ... ♟e7 51) 6 a4 (6 ♟c3 51; 6 c4 51) 6 ...
 a6 (6 ... a5 37; 6 ... ♟h4 42; 6 ... ♟f6 44) 7 ♟c3 and now:

- a) 7 ... d6
 - b) 7 ... ♟f6
- 7 ... ♟ge7 39; 7 ... ♟f6 40

- a) 7 ... d6 8 ♟e2 (8 ♟d5 42; 8 ♟e2 42; 8 a5 42) 8 ... ♟f6 (8 ... ♟h4
 42; 8 ... ♟ge7 42) 9 0-0 40
- b) 7 ... ♟f6 8 ♟e2 ♟ge7 9 ♟d5 (9 a5 48) 9 ... ♟xd5 10 exd5+ ♟e7 11
 a5 ♟a7 12 h4 h6 (12 ... 0-0 45; 12 ... d6 45; 12 ... ♟d6 46) 13 ♟d2 (13
 ♟a4 46; 13 g4 48) 13 ... 0-0 (13 ... ♟xb2 46; 13 ... d6 48) 14 ♟c3 47

5 ... ♟f6

5 ... Qxd4 33; 5 ... Qb6 33

6 c3 e7
7 Qc4

7 Qe2 23; 7 Wd2 23; 7 f4 23; 7 e2 23; 7 e2 23; 7 Qb5 23
7 g3 d5 (7 ... d6 26; 7 ... e4 26; 7 ... 0-0 27) 8 Qg2 e4 (8 ... dxe4
27; 8 ... e5 30; 8 ... Qxd4 30) 9 cxd4 Qb4+ (9 ... Qb6 30) 10 e3 31

7 ... 0-0

7 ... b6 20; 7 ... Wg6 23; 7 ... e4 23
7 ... e5 8 Qe2 (8 Qb3 14) 8 ... Wg6 (8 ... d5 15) 9 0-0 d5 (9 ... d6 17;
9 ... Wxe4 17) 10 Qb5 (10 e5 15; 10 Qf4 15; 10 Wf1 15) 10 ... Wxe4 15

8 0-0 Qb6

8 ... a6 11

9 e2

9 e3 12; 9 Qb3 12; 9 Wf1 12

9 ... d6 13

B)

4 ... e6
5 Qxc6

5 e3 Qb4 (5 ... Qc5 64; 5 ... e4 64) 6 Qxc6 (6 Qg5 65) 6 ... bxc6
7 Qd3 (7 Wd4 67; 7 Qd2 67) 7 ... d5 (7 ... 0-0 70; 7 ... d6 70) 8 exd5
(8 e5 65; 8 0-0 65) 8 ... Qe5 (8 ... Wg7+ 75) 9 0-0 0-0 10 Qg5 Qe6
(10 ... Qe7 78; 10 ... Qxc3 78; 10 ... c6 11 e4 [11 Wf3 79; 11 e2 79]
76) 11 e2 (11 Wf3 70; 11 e5 72) 11 ... h6 (11 ... Qd6 70; 11 ... Qe7 70;
11 ... Qg4 70; 11 ... Wb8 71) 12 Qh4 67

5 ... bxc6
6 e5

6 Qd3 124; 6 e2 124; 6 Wd4 124

6 ... Wg7

144 *Index of Variations*

6 ... ♖d5 120; 6 ... ♗e4 120

7 ♗e2 ♖d5
8 c4

8 h4 89

8 ... ♖a6

— 8 ... ♗b4+ 118

— 8 ... ♖b6 9 ♖d2 (9 ♖c3 86; 9 b3 86; 9 ♖f4 87) 9 ... ♗e6 (9 ... a5 89;

~~—~~ 9 ... ♖b7 89) 10 b3 a5 (10 ... ♖b4 87; 10 ... ♖e7 87) 11 ♖b2 83

9 b3

9 ♗e4 115; 9 g3 115

9 ♖d2 ♖b6 (9 ... f6 104; 9 ... ♖f4 105; 9 ... g6 107; 9 ... 0-0-0 108;

9 ... ♖b4 111) 10 b3 105

9 ... g6

9 ... 0-0-0 97; 9 ... ♗h4 100

10 f4 94

C)

4 ... ♗h4
5 ♖c3

5 ♖xc6 128; 5 ♖f3 128; 5 ♗d3 128; 5 ♖e3 129; 5 ♖f5 129; 5 ♖b5 131

5 ... ♖b4
6 ♖e2

6 ♖b5 129; 6 ♖f3 129

6 ... ♗xe4

6 ... ♖f6 129; 6 ... ♖ge7 129

7 ♖b5 129

WINNING WITH THE SCOTCH

In the 1990 World Championship match Gary Kasparov shocked the chess world with his adoption of the unusual Scotch Opening, which had for many years been considered a poor relation to the Ruy Lopez (or Spanish Game). However, in that match and subsequently Kasparov has introduced a variety of exciting new tactical ideas which have completely transformed the reputation of the Scotch into a powerful winning weapon and it is now highly fashionable at both grandmaster, tournament and club level.

- Dynamic opening popularised by World Champion Gary Kasparov
- Complete fully-annotated games used to illustrate the main ideas
- Every important variation included, with an emphasis on currently fashionable systems of attack and defence

Gary Lane is one of the new generation of talented young English International Masters. Since winning the Commonwealth Championship in 1988, he has competed with distinction in tournaments throughout Europe and has already established a fine reputation as a chess author. His first book for Batsford, *The Ruy Lopez for the Tournament Player*, was enthusiastically received by the chess press:

'His presentation is beautifully clear. Anyone who spends a little time on this book will play the better for it' *The Daily Telegraph*

'... a complete course for anyone of club strength or greater to master the essentials of this most subtle opening' *The Spectator*

Other titles in the 'Winning With ...' series include:

Winning With the Bishop's Opening

Gary Lane

Winning With the Closed Sicilian

Gary Lane

Winning With the Dutch

Robert Bellin

Winning With the English

Zoltan Ribli and Gabor Kallai

Winning With the King's Gambit

Joe Gallagher

Winning With the Nimzo-Indian

Raymond Keene

Winning With the Petroff

Anatoly Karpov

Winning With the Philidor

Tony Kosten

Winning With the Sicilian

Mark Taimanov

PUBLISHER'S
net price

£12.99

For a complete list of these and other Batsford chess books please write to:

B.T. Batsford Ltd
4 Fitzhardinge Street
London W1H 0AH

ISBN 0-7134-7211-1



9 780713 472110